조선말 배우는 책
Let's learn Korean

외국문도서출판사
Foreign Languages Books Publishing House
1989
PREFACE

International cooperation is developing rapidly between nations today in all fields including politics, the economy, culture and technology. This situation demands that we have some knowledge of the languages concerned.

In particular, foreigners visiting our country want to speak the Korean language and then associate with us in our work and life.

"Let's learn Korean" has been written to meet such a demand.

In this book all Korean words, phrases and sentences are transcribed in English letters, both literal and normal translations are given and grammatical explanations are presented in a schematic way. Therefore, all readers can read and understand all Korean words, phrases and sentences in this book without any help from other people and learn Korean in an easy way. And not only foreigners staying for a long time in our country, but also those visiting our country for a short time can use it.

"Let's learn Korean" has been written in the following order.

Pronunciation
Conversation
Grammar
Korean-English Vocabulary
English-Korean Vocabulary

Because this is the first time such a book has been produced, several mistakes may be found in it.

We hope that suggestions for revising this book will be sent to the following address:

Foreign Languages Books Publishing House, Pyongyang, DPRK

February 1989
The Author
CONTENTS

PRONUNCIATION

• The Korean Alphabet Table ..................................... 10
• Alphabet .................................................................. 12
• Vowels .................................................................. 13
• Consonants ............................................................... 16
• Syllables .................................................................. 22
• The Change of Sounds ............................................... 24
• The Intonation of Sentence ........................................ 31

CONVERSATION

• Greetings ................................................................. 32
• Do You Speak Korean? ............................................... 35
• Entry and Exit .......................................................... 36
• Customs .................................................................. 37
• Travelling by Air ....................................................... 38
• On the Way to the City from the Airport ...................... 39
• Travelling by Train .................................................... 41
• At the Hotel ............................................................. 44
• In a Restaurant ........................................................ 47
• At the Post-Office ...................................................... 51
• Money Exchange ...................................................... 53
• At the Hairdresser’s .................................................... 54
• At the Doctor’s .......................................................... 55
• Human Body ............................................................ 57
• Asking the Way ........................................................ 58
• Notices and Signs ..................................................... 60
• Taxis and Buses ......................................................... 61
• City Sightseeing ........................................................ 62
• Theatre ................................................................. 65
• Photographing .................................................. 66
• Shopping ....................................................... 67
• Numerals ....................................................... 70
• Money .......................................................... 74
• Time ............................................................ 74
• Weather ........................................................ 76
• Four Seasons ................................................... 77
• Months ......................................................... 77
• Days of the Week .............................................. 78

GRAMMAR

Lesson 1:
  • Noun ............................................................ 78
  • Declension of the Noun in the Singular ............ 79
  • Declension of A Noun in the Plural ................ 89
  • Word Order ................................................ 93

Lesson 2:
  • Personal Pronoun .......................................... 95
  • Declension of the Personal Pronoun ............... 98
  • Word Order ................................................ 108

Lesson 3:
  • Demonstrative Pronoun .................................. 109
  • Declension of the Demonstrative Pronoun ....... 111
  • Word Order ................................................ 115

Lesson 4:
  • Verb .......................................................... 117
  • Forms of the Verb ........................................ 117
  • Final Form of the Verb ................................ 120
  • Final Ending of the Verb ............................... 120
  • Adjective ................................................... 124
  • Forms of the Adjective .................................. 124
  • Final Form of the Adjective ......................... 127
  • Final Ending of the Adjective ....................... 128
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lesson</th>
<th>Topics</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Declarative Final Endings of the Verb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Declarative Final Endings of the Adjective</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Declarative Final Endings of the Verbal Form of the Noun, Pronoun or Numeral</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Word Order</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Interrogative Pronoun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Declension of the Interrogative Pronoun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Interrogative Final Endings of the Verb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Interrogative Final Endings of the Adjective</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Interrogative Final Endings of the Verbal Form of the Noun, Pronoun or Numeral</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Word Order</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Numerals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Counting Word</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Incomplete Noun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Suggestive Final Endings of the Verb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Imperative Final Endings of the Verb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Word Order</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Adverb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Connecting Form of the Verb, Adjective or Verbal Form of the Noun, Pronoun or Numeral</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Word Order</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Lesson 9:
- Pre-Noun ............................................. 200
- Interjection ........................................... 202
- Attributive Form of the Verb ..................... 202
- Attributive Form of the Adjective ................ 206
- Attributive Form of the Verbal Form of the Noun,
  Pronoun or Numeral ................................ 208
- Form of the Adverbial Modifier of the Verb or
  Adjective ............................................. 211
- Word Order ............................................ 213

Lesson 10:
- Tenses .................................................. 216
- Respect and Courtesy ............................ 223
- Word Order ............................................ 228

Lesson 11:
- Voice ................................................... 230
- Exchanging Endings ............................ 237

Lesson 12:
- Auxiliary Endings ............................... 242
- Endings Which Are Used as Case Endings .... 248

Lesson 13:
- Stem and Ending .................................... 251
- Attaching of Endings ............................ 254
- Pairs of Endings .................................... 254
- Link-Vowel .......................................... 256
- Vocal Harmony ...................................... 258
- Exchange of Sounds ............................. 260

Lesson 14:
- Parts of the Sentence ............................. 266
- Predicate ............................................. 269
- Subject ............................................... 276
- Object ............................................... 279
- Quotation ............................................. 283
Guide for the User

1. All Korean words, phrases and sentences are transcribed in English letters.

   for example:
   ○ 주체사상
   [chuchesasang]
   Juche Idea
   ○ 안녕하십니까?
   [annyaonghasimnigga]
   Hello!
   Good morning.
   Good evening.

   ○ 조선의 진달래
   [chosonui chindallae]
   Korean azalea
   ○ 고맙습니다.
   [komapsumnida]
   Thank you.

2. In transcript the separation is denoted by a point (·).

   for example:
   저는 평양으로 갑니다.
   [chonun pyongyang·uro kamnida] I go to Pyongyang.
   I go to Pyongyang to go

3. Both literal and free translations are given for all Korean sentences.

   for example:
   저는 영국 사람 입니다.
   [chonun yong·guksaramimnida] I am an Englishman.
   I am an Englishman am (free translation)
   (literal translation)

4. The asterisk in the example is related to that in the explanation.

   for example:
   내의 * 어머니
   [naui omoni]
   my mother
5. Grammatical explanations are given as follows:

* 가 + [ka da] go

**stem ending**

가 + 싫시오 (심시오—most deferential imperative form of the final ending of the verb)
### PRONUNCIATION

### THE KOREAN ALPHABET TABLE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vowels</th>
<th>[a] [ya] [o] [yo] [o] [yo] [u] [yu] [u] [i]</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Consonants</td>
<td>가 가 거 거 고 교 구 규 크 기</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[k]</td>
<td>[ka] [kya] [ko] [kyo] [ko] [kyo] [ku] [kyu] [ku] [ki]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[n]</td>
<td>나 니 너 느 노 놀 누 놀 느 니</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[t]</td>
<td>[ta] [tya] [to] [tyo] [to] [tyo] [tu] [tyu] [tu] [ti]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[r]</td>
<td>[ra] [rya] [ro] [ryo] [ro] [ryo] [ru] [ryu] [ru] [ri]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[m]</td>
<td>[ma] [mya] [mo] [myo] [mo] [myo] [mu] [myu] [mu] [mi]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[p]</td>
<td>[pa] [pya] [po] [pyo] [po] [pyo] [pu] [pyu] [pu] [pi]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[s]</td>
<td>[sa] [sya] [so] [syo] [so] [syo] [su] [syu] [su] [si]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[ng]</td>
<td>[a] [ya] [o] [yo] [o] [yo] [u] [yu] [u] [i]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사자져져조조주추즈치</td>
<td>[ch] [cha] [chya] [cho] [chyo] [chu] [chu] [chu] [chu] [chi]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>사자져져조조주추즈치</td>
<td>[ch] [cha] [chya] [cho] [chyo] [chu] [chu] [chu] [chu] [chi]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>카커커커코쿠쿠크키</td>
<td>[ka] [kya] [ko] [kyo] [ko] [kyo] [ku] [kyu] [ku] [ki]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>라라리리로로르로르로</td>
<td>[ta] [tya] [to] [tyo] [to] [tyo] [tu] [tyu] [tu] [ti]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>파파퍼퍼포포포포포포</td>
<td>[pa] [pya] [po] [pyo] [po] [pyo] [pu] [pyu] [pu] [pi]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>하하허허호호후후후후</td>
<td>[ha] [hya] [ho] [hyo] [ho] [hyo] [hu] [hyu] [hu] [hi]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>까 까 까 까 교교교교교교</td>
<td>[gga] [gya] [ggo] [gyo] [ggo] [gyo] [gu] [gyu] [gu] [gi]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>따따따따또또또또또또</td>
<td>[dda] [ddy] [ddo] [ddy] [ddo] [ddy] [du] [ddy] [du] [ddi]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>뱉 뱉 뱉 뱉 뱉 뱉 뱉 뱉</td>
<td>[bba] [bby] [bbo] [bby] [bbo] [bby] [bu] [bby] [bu] [bbi]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>쌈 쌈 쌈 쌈 쌈 쌈 쌈 쌈 쌈 쌈 쌈 쌈</td>
<td>[ssa] [ssya] [ssyo] [ssy] [ssyo] [ssu] [ssyu] [ssu] [ssi]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>짰 짰 짰 짰 짰 짰 짰 짰</td>
<td>[jj] [jja] [jjiya] [jjo] [jjyo] [jjo] [jjyo] [jju] [jjyu] [jju] [jjj]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* ○ is not pronounced at the beginning of a syllable.
2 The Korean alphabet has 40 letters.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>letter</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>transcription</th>
<th>letter</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>transcription</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ㄱ</td>
<td>kiuk</td>
<td>k, g</td>
<td>ㅏ</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㄴ</td>
<td>niun</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>ㅑ</td>
<td>ya</td>
<td>ya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㄷ</td>
<td>tiut</td>
<td>t, d</td>
<td>ㅓ</td>
<td>o</td>
<td>o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㄸ</td>
<td>riul</td>
<td>r(1)</td>
<td>ㅔ</td>
<td>yo</td>
<td>yo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅁ</td>
<td>mium</td>
<td>m</td>
<td>ㅗ</td>
<td>o</td>
<td>o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅂ</td>
<td>piup</td>
<td>p, b</td>
<td>ㅜ</td>
<td>yu</td>
<td>yu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅅ</td>
<td>siut</td>
<td>s, t</td>
<td>ㅓ</td>
<td>u</td>
<td>u</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅇ</td>
<td>iung</td>
<td>ng</td>
<td>ㅏ</td>
<td>i</td>
<td>i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅈ</td>
<td>chiut</td>
<td>ch, j, t</td>
<td>ㅐ</td>
<td>ae</td>
<td>ae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅉ</td>
<td>chiut</td>
<td>ch, t</td>
<td>ㅒ</td>
<td>yae</td>
<td>yae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅋ</td>
<td>kiuk</td>
<td>k</td>
<td>ㅔ</td>
<td>e</td>
<td>e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅌ</td>
<td>tiut</td>
<td>t</td>
<td>ㅖ</td>
<td>ye</td>
<td>ye</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅍ</td>
<td>piup</td>
<td>p</td>
<td>ㅗ</td>
<td>oe</td>
<td>oe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅎ</td>
<td>hiuh</td>
<td>h</td>
<td>ㅜ</td>
<td>wi</td>
<td>wi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㅋ</td>
<td>toengiuk</td>
<td>gg, k</td>
<td>ㅡ</td>
<td>ui</td>
<td>ui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㄲ</td>
<td>toendiut</td>
<td>dd</td>
<td>ㅏ</td>
<td>wa</td>
<td>wa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㄳ</td>
<td>toenbiup</td>
<td>bb</td>
<td>ㄱ</td>
<td>wo</td>
<td>wo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㄵ</td>
<td>toensiut</td>
<td>ss, t</td>
<td>ㅐ</td>
<td>wae</td>
<td>wae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ㄶ</td>
<td>toenjiut</td>
<td>jj</td>
<td>ㅔ</td>
<td>we</td>
<td>we</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
VOWELS

3 The Korean language has 21 vowels:

\[ \text{ㅏ, ㅑ, ㅓ, ㅕ, ㅗ, ㅛ, ㅜ, ㅠ, ㅡ, ㅣ, ㅐ, ㅒ, ㅔ, ㅖ, ㅚ, ㅟ, ㅢ, ㅣ, ㅑ, ㅕ, ㅖ, ㅒ, ㅢ, ㅣ} \]

The vowels are divided into simple vowels and diphthongs.

4 1. The simple vowels

The simple vowels are those for which the shape of the oral cavity does not change in pronunciation.

There are 10 simple vowels:

\[ \text{ㅏ, ㅑ, ㅓ, ㅕ, ㅗ, ㅛ, ㅜ, ㅠ, ㅡ, ㅣ} \]

5 2. The diphthongs

The diphthongs are those vowels for which the shape of the oral cavity changes in pronunciation and two vowels become one.

There are 11 diphthongs:

\[ \text{ㅐ, ㅒ, ㅔ, ㅖ, ㅚ, ㅟ, ㅢ, ㅣ, ㅑ, ㅕ, ㅖ, ㅒ, ㅢ, ㅣ} \]

6 The vowels are pronounced as follows:

1. ㅏ is pronounced [a] as in car and transcribed as 〈a〉.

   for example:
   \[ \text{어 [a]  ah} \]

2. ㅓ is pronounced [ə] as in ago and transcribed as 〈o〉.

   for example:
   \[ \text{어머니 [omoni] mother} \]

3. ㅗ is pronounced [ɔ] as in on and transcribed as 〈o〉.

   for example:
   \[ \text{으 [ɔ] oh} \]
4. T is pronounced [u] as in good and transcribed as 〈u〉.
   for example:
   우리 [uri] we

5. — is almost a groaning sound in the chest and is pronounced between [u] in good and [i] in window and transcribed as 〈u〉.
   for example:
   꼴 [ku] he

6. I is pronounced [i] as in it and transcribed as 〈i〉.
   for example:
   아이 [ai] child

7. H is pronounced [æ] as in man and transcribed as 〈ae〉.
   for example:
   해 [æ] child

8. HI is pronounced [e] as in bed and transcribed as 〈e〉.
   for example:
   네 [ne] you; your; yes

9. IL is pronounced [oe] as in Goethe and transcribed as 〈oe〉.
   for example:
   쇼 [soe] iron

10. TI is pronounced [wi] as in window and transcribed as 〈wi〉.
    for example:
    위 [wi] stomach

11. T is pronounced [ja] as in yard and transcribed as 〈ya〉.
    for example:
    야 [yak] medicine

12. T is pronounced [jə] as in you [jə] and transcribed as 〈yo〉.
    for example:
    여기 [yogi] here
13. ι is pronounced [jo] as in york and transcribed as ⟨yo⟩.
   for example:
   교실 [kyosil] classroom

14. Π is pronounced [ju] as in you and transcribed as ⟨yu⟩.
   for example:
   유리 [yuri] glass

15. Η is pronounced [je] as in yes and transcribed as ⟨yae⟩.
   for example:
   애 [yae] hullo (call to a child or between children)

16. Π is pronounced [je] as in yellow and transcribed as ⟨ye⟩.
   for example:
   애 [ye] yes (answer to an elder or a superior)

17. ι [ui] is pronounced quickly but as a diphthong and transcribed as ⟨ui⟩.
   for example:
   의사 [uisa] doctor

18. ι is pronounced [wa] as in guaiacum and transcribed as ⟨wa⟩.
   for example:
   와 [wa] and

19. Π is pronounced [wa] as in word and transcribed as ⟨wo⟩.
   for example:
   원 [won] circle; won (unit of Korean currency)

20. ι is pronounced [wae] as in wax and transcribed as ⟨wae⟩.
   for example:
   왜 [wae] why

21. Π is pronounced almost like [we] in wet and transcribed as ⟨we⟩.
   for example:
   왜 [wen] what
Individual vowels are pronounced separately.
for example:
아세아 [asea] Asia

7 The vowels are written as follows:

\[
\begin{array}{cccc}
\hat{1} & \hat{12} & \hat{12} & \hat{12} \\
\hat{1} & \hat{12} & \hat{12} & \hat{12} \\
\hat{12} & \hat{12} & \hat{12} & \hat{12} \\
\hat{12} & \hat{12} & \hat{12} & \hat{12} \\
\hat{12} & \hat{12} & \hat{12} & \hat{12} \\
\end{array}
\]

CONSONANTS

8 The Korean language has 19 consonants:
\[\text{ㄱ,ㄴ,ㄷ,ㄹ,ㅁ,ㅂ,ㅅ,ㅇ,ㅈ,ㅊ,ㅋ,ㅌ,ㅍ,ㅎ,ㄲ,ㄸ,ㅃ,ㅆ,ㅉ}\]

9 The consonants are pronounced as follows:

1) ㄱ is pronounced a little harder than [g].
   1) ㄱ is transcribed as [k] at the beginning of a word.
      for example:
      그[ku] he
   2) ㄱ is transcribed as [k] at the end of a word.
      for example:
      조국 [choguk] fatherland
3) 꼬 is transcribed as [k] before another consonant. For example:
   꺾창 [kukjang] theatre
4) 꼬 is transcribed as [g] before a vowel. For example:
   고기 [kogi] meat

2. 꼬 is pronounced [k] as in the French conte.
1) 꼬 is transcribed as [gg] at the beginning of a word. For example:
   꽃다발 [ggotdabal] bouquet
2) 꼬 is transcribed as [gg] before a vowel. For example:
   도끼 [toggi] axe
3) 꼬 is transcribed as [k] at the end of a word. For example:
   밖 [pak] outside
4) 꼬 is transcribed as [k] before another consonant. For example:
   묶다 [mukda] bind

3. 꼫 is pronounced [k] as in cold. It is a sharply aspirated and powerfully pronounced 꼫[k].
   꼫 is transcribed as [k]. For example:
   코 [ko] nose

4. 꼝 is pronounced a little harder than [b].
1) 꼝 is transcribed as [p] at the beginning of a word. For example:
   비 [bi] rain
2) 꼝 is transcribed as [p] at the end of a word. For example:
   밥 [pap] boiled rice
3) 꼝 is transcribed as [p] before another consonant.
for example:

-for example:

4) Н is transcribed as [b] before a vowel.

-for example:

5. is pronounced [p] as in the French пincette.

-for example:

6. is pronounced [p] as in park. It is a sharply aspirated and powerfully pronounced Н [b].

-for example:

7. is pronounced a little harder than [d].

1) is transcribed as [t] at the beginning of a word.

-for example:

2) is transcribed as [t] at the end of a word.

-for example:

3) is transcribed as [t] before another consonant.

-for example:

4) is transcribed as [d] before a vowel.

-for example:

8. is pronounced [t] as in the Spanish tobacco.

-for example:
9. ddf is pronounced [t] as in tank. It is a sharply aspirated and powerfully pronounced d [t].
ddf is transcribed as <t>,
for example:
○트롱크 [turongku] trunk
○봉투 [bontu] envelope
○발 [bat] field
○같다 [katda] equal

10. X is pronounced [z] as in zero.
1) X is transcribed as [ch] at the beginning of a word.
   for example:
   조선 [choson] Korea
2) X is transcribed as [j] before a vowel.
   for example:
   아버지 [aboji] father
3) X is transcribed as [t] at the end of a word.
   for example:
   낮 [nat] day
4) X is transcribed as [t] before another consonant.
   for example:
   늦다 [nutda] late

11. X is pronounced [ts] as in tsar and transcribed as <jj>
    for example:
    동쪽 [tongjjok] east

12. X is pronounced [tf] as in child. It is a sharply aspirated and powerfully pronounced x [ch].
1) X is transcribed as [ch] at the beginning of a word.
   for example:
   춤 [chum] dance
2) X is transcribed as [ch] before a vowel.
   for example:
   자동차 [chadongcha] auto
3) 껍 is transcribed as [t] at the end of a word.
   for example:
   꽃 [ggot] flower
4) 껍 is transcribed as [t] before another consonant.
   for example:
   꽃방 [ggotbang] florist's shop
13. ᵃ is pronounced [s] as in song.
   1) ᵃ is transcribed as [s] at the beginning of a word.
      for example:
      수도 [suda] capital
   2) ᵃ is transcribed as [s] before a vowel.
      for example:
      도시 [tosi] city

3) ᵃ is transcribed as [t] at the end of a word.
   for example:
   옷 [ot] clothes
4) ᵃ is transcribed as [t] before another consonant.
   for example:
   웃다 [utda] laugh
14. ᵃ is pronounced [s] as in the French sans.
   1) ᵃ is transcribed as [ss] at the beginning of a word.
      for example:
      찰 [ssal] rice
   2) ᵃ is transcribed as [ss] before a vowel.
      for example:
      날씨 [nalssi] weather
3) ᵃ is transcribed as [t] at the end of a word.
   for example:
   겨 [ket] (the ending of the future tense)
4) ᵃ is transcribed as [t] before another consonant.
   for example:
   있다 [itda] there is
15. ᵃ is pronounced [n] as in pen.
It is transcribed as [n].
for example:
O 나 [na] I
O 조선 [choson] Korea

16. □ is pronounced [m] as in man.
□ is transcribed as [m].
for example:
O 어머니 [omoni] mother
O 사람 [saram] man

17. ㄹ

<r> and <l> are denoted in Korean by the same letter ㄹ.
The following rules are applied to this double pronunciation:

1) ㄹ is transcribed as [r] at the beginning of a word.
   for example:
   라디오 [rajio] radio

2) ㄹ is transcribed as [r] before a vowel.
   for example:
   우리 [uri] we

3) ㄹ is transcribed as [l] at the end of a word.
   for example:
   물 [mul] water

4) ㄹ is transcribed as [l] before another consonant.
   for example:
   팔다 [paldar] sell

5) When ㄴ and ㄹ come together, then ㄴㄹ is always transcribed as double [l].
   for example:
   천리 [cholli] thousand ri (ri is a Korean unit of distance.)

18. 공 is pronounced [h] as in hat and transcribed as ⟨h⟩.
for example:

하나 [hana] one

19. o is pronounced [ŋ] as in song. But at the beginning
    of a syllable o is not pronounced.
    o is transcribed as 〈ng〉.
    for example:
    강 [kang] river

10 The consonants are written as follows:

SYLLABLES

11 A word consists of one or more syllables. A syllable
    consists of one or more consonants and one vowel.
    The syllables are divided into 5 forms:
1. The one-vowel syllable
   for example:
   아이 [ai] child

   explanation:
   The syllable 아이 consists of the consonant о and the vowel ㅏ. The consonant о is not pronounced at the beginning of a syllable. Therefore, the syllable 아이 is considered a one-vowel syllable.

2. The one-consonant-and-one-vowel syllable
   for example:
   나무 [namu] tree; wood

   explanation:
   The syllable 나무 consists of the consonant ड and the vowel ु. The consonant ड consists of the consonant ड and the vowel उ. Therefore, the syllable 나무 is considered a one-vowel syllable.

3. The one-vowel-and-one-consonant syllable
   for example:
   워 [il] work

   explanation:
   The syllable 워 consists of the consonant ㅇ, the vowel ㅏ and the consonant ㄹ. The consonant ㅇ is not pronounced at the beginning of a syllable. Therefore, the syllable 워 is considered a one-vowel-and-one-consonant syllable.

4. The syllable consisting of one consonant, one vowel and one consonant
   for example:
   물 [mul] water

   explanation:
   The syllable 물 consists of the consonantㅁ, the vowel ㅜ and the consonant ㄹ.

5. The syllable consisting of one consonant, one vowel and a double consonant
for example:

**값** [kap] price

derivation:
The syllable **값** consists of the consonant ㄱ, the vowel ㅏ and
the double consonant ㄲ.

**THE CHANGE OF SOUNDS**

12 Sounds change in six different ways.

1. The assimilation of sound

The assimilation of sound means that a sound in a word
is pronounced, under the influence of its foregoing or fol¬
lowing sound, same as or alike to its foregoing or follow¬
ing sound.

There are 3 assimilations of sound:

1) The assimilation of sonants ㄴ[n], ㅁ[m], ㄹ[r]

(1) The sounds ㄱ[k], ㄲ[gg] and ㅋ[kk] are pronounced ㅂ
[ng] before a sonant.  
for example:

- 독립 [tokrip] independence  
  [동립] [tongrip] (as a result of the assimilation of
  the sonant ㄹ[r])

- 탕수다 [taknunda] polish  
  [당수다] [tangnunda] (as a result of the assimilation
  of the sonant ㄴ[n])

- 부엌문 [puokmun] kitchen door  
  [부엌문] [puongmun] (as a result of the assimilation
  of the sonant ㅁ[m])

(2) The sound ㅂ[p] and ㅍ[p] are pronounced ㅁ[m] be¬
fore a sonant.

for example:

- 법령 [popryong] law  
  [법령] [pomryong] (as a result of the assimilation
  of the sonant ㄹ[r])
The sounds "[t], "[t], "[ch], "[ch], "[s] and "[ss] are pronounced "[n] before a sonant.
for example:

- 맞누이 [matnui] the eldest sister
  [만누이 ][mannui](as a result of the assimilation of the sonant "[m])

- 발머리 [patmori] edge of a field
  [반머리 ][panmori](as a result of the assimilation of the sonant "[n])

- 척먹이 [chotmogi] suckling
  [천먹이 ][chonnogi](as a result of the assimilation of the sonant "[m])

- 꽃망울 [ggotmang-ul] flower bud
  [관망울 ][ggonmang-ul](as a result of the assimilation of the sonant "[m])

- 잡나무 [chatnamu] pine-nut tree
  [잔나무 ][channamu] (as a result of the assimilation of the sonant "[n])

- 있느냐 [itnunya] is there?
  [인느냐 ][innunya] (as a result of the assimilation of the sonant "[n])

2) The assimilation of the sound "[l]

(1) The sound "[n] is pronounced "[l] before the sound "[l].
for example:
단련 [tanlyon] training
[달련 ][tallyon](as a result of the assimilation of the sound "[l])

(2) The sound "[n] is pronounced "[l] after the sound "[l].
for example:
설날 [solnal] New Year’s Day

[설날] [solnal] (as a result of the assimilation of the sound 槿 [l])

3) The assimilation of the palatal
1) The sound 槿 [t] is pronounced 槿 [j] before the palatal 槿 [i].
for example:
해돋이 [haetotji] sunrise

[해돋이] [haetotji] (as a result of the assimilation of the palatal 槿 [i])

2) The sound槿 [t] is pronounced槿 [ch] before the palatal槿 [i].
for example:
한결같이 [hangyolgachi] unanimously

[한결같이] [hangyolgachi] (as a result of the assimilation of the palatal槿 [i])

2. The shut consonants
When a consonant lies at the end of a word or before a voiceless sound, it is pronounced as shut.

1) The sounds槿 [k] and槿 [gg] are pronounced as a shut槿 [k] at the end of a word or before a voiceless sound.
for example:

○ 부엌 [puok] kitchen

[부엌] [puok] (at the end of the word)

○ 깎다 [ggagda] pare; shear; shave

[깎다] [ggagda] (before the voiceless sound槿) (refer to 12-3.)

2) The sounds槿 [t],槿 [j],槿 [ch],槿 [s] and槿 [ss] are pronounced as a shut槿 [t] at the end of a word or before a voiceless sound.
for example:

○ 밭 [pat] field

[밭] [pat] (at the end of the word)
3) The sound ㅍ [p] is pronounced as a shut ㅍ [p] at the end of a word or before a voiceless sound. For example:

○ 임 [ip] leaf
    [임][ip] (at the end of the word)

○ 덮다 [topda] cover
    [덮다][topda] (before the voiceless sound ◀) (refer to 12-3.)

3. The strengthening of a sound

The strengthening of a sound means that a soft sound becomes a strong sound under the influence of the consonant which comes before it. But the strong sounds are transcribed as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Soft Sound</th>
<th>Strong Sound</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>gg</td>
<td>g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dd</td>
<td>d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bb</td>
<td>b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ss</td>
<td>s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jj</td>
<td>j</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For example:

빛깔 [빛깔] [bitgal] → [bitgal] colour
집단 [집단] [chipdan] → [chipdan] group
늦봄 [늦봄] [nutbom] → [nutbom] late spring
봄바람 [봄바람] [pombbaram] → [pombbaram] spring breeze
있소 [있소] [itso] → [itso] there is
극장 [극장] [kukjang] → [kukjang] theatre

1) A soft sound becomes a strong sound after a consonant which is not sonant.
for example:

집단 [chipdan] collective

[집단] [chipddan](as a result of the strengthening of the soft sound □ [d] after the voiceless sound □ [p])

But [집단] [chipddan] is transcribed as [chipdan].

2) After a sonant a soft sound becomes as follows:

(1) a strong sound

for example:

봄바람 [pombaram] spring breeze

[봄바람] [pombaram](as a result of the strengthening of the soft sound □ [b] after the sonant □ [m])

But [봄바람] [pombaram] is transcribed as [pombaram].

(2) not a strong sound

for example:

충성 [chungsong] loyalty

explanation:

The soft sound □ [s] does not become a strong sound after sonant □ [ng].

4. The insertion of a sound

The insertion of a sound means that a sound is inserted when a word is pronounced.

There are 2 methods of insertion:

1) The consonant □ [n] is inserted.

for example:

부엌일 [puokil] kitchen work

[부엌일] [puoknil](as a result of the insertion of the consonant □ [n])

[부엌일] [puongnil] (as a result of the assimilation of the sonant □ [n])

2) The consonant □ [t] is inserted.

for example:

기발 [kibal] flag

[기발] [kitbal](as a result of the insertion of the consonant □ [t])
5. The omission of a sound

The omission of a sound means that a certain sound is omitted when sounds are linked.

There are 2 methods of omission:

1) The sound ㅎ [h] of a stem is not pronounced before an ending or a suffix which begins with a vowel, for example:

- 많았다 [manhatda] were much

[많았다] [manatda] [as a result of the omission of the sound ㅎ [h] before the past tense ending ㅏ [at] (refer to 166) which begins with the vowel ㅏ [a]]

- 많이 [manhi] much

[많이] [mani] [as a result of the omission of the sound ㅎ [h] before the suffix 이[i] which begins with the vowel 이[i]]

2) The penultimate or the last consonant in a syllable is omitted.

(1) The penultimate consonant ㄹ [l] in a syllable is omitted when the penultimate and last consonants ㄹ[k], ㅂ[lm], ㅍ[lp] or ㅃ[lp] in a syllable come before another consonant or at the end of a word, for example:

- 닭 [talk]hen

[닭] [tak] [as a result of the omission of the penultimate consonant ㄹ [l]]

- 살다 [salnda] cook

[살다] [samda] [as a result of the omission of the penultimate consonant ㄹ [l]]

[살다] [samda] [as a result of the strengthening of the sound ㄷ [d]]
(1) Tread [palpda] (as a result of the omission of the penultimate consonant ꀇ [l])
[밥 다] [papda] (as a result of the strengthening of the sound ꀇ [d])

(2) Recite [ulpda] (as a result of the omission of the penultimate consonant ꀇ [l])
[음다] [upda] (as a result of the strengthening of the sound ꀇ [d])

2. The last consonant in a syllable is omitted when it is a lingual, for example:

There is no [optda]. As the last consonant ꀇ [t] is a lingual, it is omitted.

6. The contraction of sounds

The contraction of sounds means that some sounds standing side by side contract into one sound.

There are 2 methods of contraction:

1) Sounds contract into a strong sound.
A soft sound and the sound ꀇ [h] following it contract into a strong sound.

for example:

역할 [yokhal] role
[역할] [yokal] (as a result of the contraction of the sounds ꀇ [k] and ꀇ [h])

2) Two vowels contract into a new vowel.

for example:

아이 [ai] child
6 child (as a result of the contraction of the vowels [a] and [i])

THE INTONATION OF SENTENCE

13 The kinds of sentences are indicated by whether the tone is rising or falling at the end of a sentence.

1. The falling tone is used at the end of a declarative sentence.
   For example:
   
   그가 온다.  
   [kuga onda]  
   he is coming
   
   He is coming.

2. The rising tone is used at the end of an interrogative sentence.
   For example:
   
   그가 오는가?  
   [kuga onun-ga]  
   he comes?
   
   Is he coming?
   
   But the interrogative word should be stressed when it appears in an interrogative sentence.
   For example:
   
   그가 언제 오는가?  
   [kuga onje onun-ga]  
   he when comes?
   
   When is he coming?

3. The tone should be even to the end of a suggestive sentence.
   For example:
   
   가자! [kaja] Let us go!

4. The falling tone is used at the end of an imperative sentence.
   For example:
   
   가라! [kara] Go!
5. The tone should be even to the end of an exclamatory sentence, for example:

오, 조국아여!
[o chogugiyo]
oh! fatherland

CONVERSATION

한녕 하십니까?
[annyonghasimnigga]
well?

어떻게 지내십니까?
[oddoke chinaesimnigga]
how live?

나는 아주 건강합니다.
[nanun aju kon·ganghamnida]
I very healthy

당신도 건강합니까?
[tangsindo kon·ganghamnigga]
you also very healthy?

고맙습니다, 아주 건강합니다.
[komapsumnida aju kon·ganghamnida]
thank you very healthy

처음 보십시오.
[choum poepsumnida]
first time see

어서 들어오십시오.
[oso turoosipsio]
please come in

어서 앉으십시오.
[oso anjusipsio]
please sit down

Greetings

Hello!

Good morning.

Good evening.

How are you?

Very well, and you?

Thank you, I am very well.

How do you do?

Come in, please!

Take your seat, please.
Thank you very much.

Wait a minute please.

Who are you?

May I have your name, please?

My name is ....

Where are you from?

I am from England.

I am an Englishman.

Do you speak English?

I have a poor command of English.

Yes.

No.

All right.
| 나옵니다. | Bad. |
| [nabbumnida] | |
| bad | |
| 기꺼이. | With pleasure. |
| [kiggoi] | |
| with pleasure | |
| 미안합니다. | Excuse me. |
| [mianhamnida] | |
| excuse me | |
| 선생. | Mr. |
| [sonsaeng] | |
| teacher | |
| 여سير. | Please! |
| [oso] | |
| please | |
| 대단히 고맙습니다. | Thank you very much. |
| [taedani komapsumnida] | |
| very thank | |
| 친만에. | You are welcome. |
| [chonmane] | |
| you are welcome | |
| 다시 만납시다. | See you again! |
| [tasi mannapsida] | |
| again meet | |
| 안녕히 가십시오. | Good-bye. |
| [annyong·i kasipsio] | |
| well go! | |
| 안녕히 계십시오. | Good-bye. |
| [annyong·i kyesipsio] | |
| well be! | |
| 안녕히 주무십시오. | Good night. |
| [annyong·i chumusipsio] | |
| well sleep! | |
당신은 조선말을 아십니까?  Do you speak Korean?
[tangsinun chosonmarul asimnigga]

당신은 조선말을 아십니까?  Do you speak Korean?
[tangsinun chosonmarul asimnigga]

Do you speak Korean?

당신은 영어를 아십니까?  Do you speak English?
[tangsinun yong-orul asimnigga]

Do you speak English?

I speak Korean.

나는 조선말을 아닙니다.  I speak Korean.
[nanun chosonmarul amnida]

I have a poor command of English.

나는 영어를 잘 못합니다.  I understand everything quite well.
[nanun yong-orul chal motamnida]

나는 당신의 말을 다 이해들습니다.  I can’t understand everything.
[nanun tangsinui marul ta aradutsumnida]

I beg your pardon!

말해주시오.  Speak more slowly, please!
[malhaejusipsio]

Speak more slowly, please!

 좀더 천천히 말해주시오.  Speak more slowly, please!
[chomdo chonchoni malhaejusipsio]

I understand everything quite well.

I can’t understand everything.

I beg your pardon!

I have a poor command of English.
입국 및 출국 [ipguk mit chulguk]

입국수속 [ipguksusok]
entry formalities

I am a tourist. [nanun kwan·gwang·gaegimnida]

Where can I collect back my luggage? [sonjimun odiso chajulsu the luggage where can]

I'm going to Pyongyang directly. [nanun pyongyang·uro chikaenghamnida]

entry formalities

I am a tourist.

Where can I collect back my luggage?

I'm going to Pyongyang directly.
세관 [segwan]

나에게는 신고수속해야 할 [na · egenun sin · gosusokae ya hal]
with me to declare

물건은 없습니다. [mulgonun opsumnida]
article isn't

이것은 모두 나의 개인용품입니다. [igosun modu naui kaeinyongpumimnida]
this all my article for

personal is

이것은 동물에게 줄 선물입니다. [igosun tongmuege chul sonmurimnida]
this a friend to to give a gift is

이것은 영국으로 가지고가는 [igosun yong · guguro kajigoganun]
this England to taking

기념품입니다. [kinyompumimnida]
a souvenir is

나에게는 귀중품은 없습니다. [na · egenun kwijungpumun opsumnida]
me jewelry isn't

인삼술 2병 있습니다. [insamsul tubyong itsumnida]
Insam (ginseng) wine 2 bottles are

나에게는 300파운드 있습니다. [na · egenun sambaek paundu itsumnida]
me 300 pound is

이 사진기는 나의 [i sajin · ginun naui]
this camera my

개인용품입니다. [kaeinyongpumimnida]
for personal use article is

Customs

I have nothing to declare.

These are all my personal belongings.

This is a gift for a friend.

This is a souvenir I'm taking to England.

I have no jewelry.

I have 2 bottles of Insam (ginseng) wine.

I have 300 pounds.

This camera is for my personal use.
You must be at the airport at 10 o’clock in the morning.

From which airport do we leave?

Take my baggage to the counter.

Where is the booking-office?

Two tickets to London, please!

When do we land at London?

Where is Gate 2?

I have three pieces of baggage.
On the Way to the City from the Airport

Where is the tourist information office?
Can you recommend a good hotel?

Please get me a porter!

Take this luggage to the taxi, please!

Take me to the Changgwangsan Hotel!
기차려행 [kicharyohaeng]

Are you going to Pyongyang?
Yes, I am going to Pyongyang.
When will you start?
I shall start tomorrow morning.
How long does it take to the station?
We shall be there in a quarter of an hour.
Here we are at the station.
Get your ticket!
Let me have a first-class ticket.

Travelling by Train

Are you going to Pyongyang?
Yes, I am going to Pyongyang.
When will you start?
I shall start tomorrow morning.
How long does it take to the station?
We shall be there in a quarter of an hour.
Here we are at the station.
Get your ticket!
Let me have a first-class ticket.

旅客 [pyongyang-e kasimnigga]
Pyongyang to go
예, 평양에 갑니다. [ye pyongyang-e kamnida]
yes Pyongyang to go
언제 며나십니까? [onje ddonasimnigga]
when start?
레일 아침에 며납니다. [raeil achime ddonamnida]
tomorrow morning start
정거장까지 얼마나 [chong·gojang·ggaji olmana]
station to how much
جل립니까? [kollimnigga]
take?
15분에 갑니다. [sibobune kamnida]
15minutes in go
자, 정거장에 왔습니다. [cha chon·gojang·e watsumnida]
now the station to have come
차표를 사십시오. [chapyorul sasipsio]
ticket buy!
1등차표를 한장 [ildungchapyorul hanjang]
first-class ticket one sheet
사겠습니까. [sagetsumnida]
will buy
Give me a first-class one way ticket to Pyongyang!

How long does it take to get to Pyongyang?

Is it an express?

Does this train have a sleeping compartment?

Does this train carry a dining car?

May I smoke here?

From which platform does the train leave?
여서 타십시오.
[oso tasipsio]
please get in

기차가 곧 멈칩니다.
[kichaga kot ddonamnida]
the train instantly start

저, 멈춥니다.
[cha ddonatsumnida]
now started

여기는 어느 정거장 입니까?
[yoginun onu chong·gojang·imnigga]
this place which station is?

여기는 함흥역입니다.
[yoginun hamhung·yogimnida]
this place Hamhung Station is

여기서 얼마나 동안 멈습니까?
[yogiso olmatong·an motsumnigga]
here how long stops?

다음은 어느 정거장 입니까?
[taumun onu chong·gojang·imnigga]
the next which station is?

1 시간이면 평양에
[hansiganimyon pyongyang·e]
an hour's time in Pyongyang at

도착합니다.
[tochakamnida]
arrive

평양에 도착하게 되면
[pyongyang·e tochakage toemyon]
Pyongyang at when reach

알려주십시오.
[allyojusipsio]
let me know

저, 평양에 왔습니다.
[cha pyongyang·e watsumnida]
now Pyongyang to have come

여서 내리십시오!
[oso naerisipsio]
please get off!

Get in, please!
The train’s about to start.
Now we’re off.
What station is this?
This is Hamhung Station.
How long does the train stop here?
What is the next station?
We’ll be in Pyongyang in an hour.
Please let me know when we reach Pyongyang.
Here we are in Pyongyang.
Get off, please!
At the Hotel

What hotel are you going to?

I am going to the Pyongyang Hotel.

Here we are (at the Pyongyang Hotel).

Have you any vacant rooms?

My name is...

Here is my passport.

We are four in all.

여느 력관으로 가십니까?
[onu ryogwanuro kasimnigga] what hotel to go?

평양 력관으로 갑니다.
[pyongyangrjogwanuro kamnida] Pyongyang Hotel to go

자, 평양 력관에 왔습니다.
[cha pyongyangryogwane watsumnida] now Pyongyang Hotel to have oome

빈 방이 있습니다?
[pin pang′i itsumnigga] vacant room is there?

저의 이름은 ... 입니다.
[choui irumun ... imnida] my name ... is

력권이 여기 있습니다.
[ryoggwoni yogi itsumnida] passport here is

우리는 4 명입니다.
[urinun nemyong′imnida] we four persons are

나가는곳 [naganun′got] exit

들어가는곳 [turoganun′got] entrance

플레이홍 [pullaetuhom] platform

철길 [cholgil] railway

리객차 [ryogaekcha] passenger train

낮차 [natcha] day train

밤차 [pamcha] night train

전기차 [chon′gicha] electric train

차장 [chajang] conductor

첩대칸 [chimdaekan] compartment
여기에 씁녕어 주십시오.
[yogie ssonoo chusipsio]
here fill in please!

나의 방은 몇호실입니까?
[nau pang-un myotosiriminigga]
my room what number is?

이 방값은 얼마입니까?
[i pang·gapsun olmaimnigga]
this room price how much is?

이 방이 마음에 듭니다.
[i pang·i maume tumnida]
this room heart to suits

나는 외출합니다.
[nanun oechulhamnida]
I go out

1시에 돌아오겠습니다.
[hansie toraogetsunmida]
one at will be back

오늘 저녁에는 늦게
[onul chonyogenun nutge]
today the evening in late

돌아오겠습니다.
toraogetsunmida]
will come back

나는 지금 돌아옵니다.
[nanun chigum toraomnida]
I now come back

누가 나를 찾아왔습니까?
[nuga narul chajawatsumnigga]
anyone me has asked for?

나에게 편지가 왔습니까?
[na·ege pyonjiga watsumnigga]
me for letter came?

호실관리원을 찾아주십시오.
[hosilgwalliwonul chajajusipsio]
a chambermaid seek!

들어오십시오.
turoosipsio]
come in!

Please, fill this in!

What is my room number?

What is the price of this room?

I like this room.

I am going out.

I will be back at one.

This evening I will come back late.

I am back now.

Has anyone called for me?

Is there any mail for me?

Please send a chambermaid.

Come in.
When can I have dinner?

Is there anyone here who can speak English?

Please bring me ...

Please wake me at 6 o’clock tomorrow morning.

Please bring my breakfast to my room!

Please send it by air mail.

Iron these things, please.

I want to send it to the laundry.

When will I get it back?
나는 오늘 저녁에
[nanun onul chonyoge] I today the evening in
떠날아.
ddonamnida] leave
돈을 청산하려고 합니다.
[tonul chongsanhyorego hamnida] money to settle want
계산서를 만들어주십시오.
[kyesansorul mandurochusipsio] the bill get ready!
나는 얼마나 물어야 합니까?
[nanun olma muroya hamnigga] I how much must pay?

In a Restaurant

식당에서 [sikdang∙eso]

식당에 갑시다.
[sikdang∙e kapsida] the restaurant to go!
무엇을 드릴가요?
[muosul turilgayo] what may offer?

Let’s go to the restaurant!
What can I do for you?
Menu please!

I’ll have the table d’hôte.

Can I have it right away?

Do you want tea or coffee?

I want coffee.

Here are boiled rice and toast.

Which will you have?

I’ll have boiled rice.

How do you like the coffee?

Have some more sugar, please!

Do you like milk?
생달걀을 드시겠습니까?
[fresh egg will take?]

따라 좀.
[butter a little]

햄을 좀.
[ham a little]

소금을 좀 주십시오.
[salt a little give please!]

후추가루를 좀 주십시오.
[pepper a little give please!]

빵을 좀 더 주십시오.
[bread some more give please!]

나는 이것을 주문하지
[I this ordered]

아니 LayoutInflater

포도술을 드시겠습니까 아니면
[wine will drink or]

맥주를 드시겠습니까?
[beer will drink?]

맥주를 마시겠습니다.
[beer will drink]

친선을 위하여 마시겠습니다.
[friendship for let's drink!]

우리의 상봉을 위하여!
[our meeting for!]

Will you have some fresh eggs?

A little butter, please.

A little ham, please.

May I have some salt, please!

May I have some pepper, please?

Some more bread, please!

This is not what I ordered.

Will you drink wine or beer?

I will drink beer.

Let's drink to our friendship!

To our meeting!
당신의 건강을 위하여!
[kon·gang·ul wihayo]

당신의 행복을 위하여!
[haengbogul wihayo]

담교기를 좀 더 드시겠습니까?
[chomdo tusigetsunmigga]

아니요. 고맙습니다. 충분합니다.
[ani·yo komapsumniua chungbunhamnida]

고맙습니다. 더 먹고 싶지
[komapsumnida to mokgosipji]

감사합니다. 음식을 더 먹고 싶지 않습니까?
[taej opaej uos sikudagwaro]

이 좋은 조선사과를 드십시오.
[i choun chosonsagwarul tusipsio]

접대원 둔무!
[chopdaewondongmu olmaimnigga]

식당 [sikdang] restaurant
접대원 [chopdaewon] waiter
너자접대원 [nyojapdaewon] waitress
조선음식 [chosonomousik] Korean food
구라파음식 [kurapaumsik] European food

To your health!

To your happiness!

Will you have more chicken?

No, thank you. I have enough.

No more, thank you.

Thank you. It was delicious.

What would you like for dessert?

Help yourself to this fine Korean apple!

Waiter, let me have the bill.

아침식사 [achimsiksa] breakfast
점심식사 [chomsimsiksa] lunch
저녁식사 [chonyoksiksa] dinner
식사안내표 [siksaanaepeyo] menu
국 [kuk] soup
밥 [pap] boiled rice
At the Post-Office

Where is the international post office?

우편국에서 [upyon gugeso]

At the Post-Office

Where is the international post office?
우표를 주십시오.
[upyorul chusipsio]
I want some stamps.

이 전보를 치고싶습니다.
[i chonborul chigosipsumnida]
I want to send this telegram.

전보용지는 어디 있습니까?
[chonboyongjinun odi itsumnigga]
the telegram form where is?

이 전보를 보내주십시오.
[i chonborul ponaejusipsio]
this telegram send please!

이 소포를 보내고싶습니다.
[i soporul ponaegosipsumnida]
this parcel to send want

이 편지를 항공우편으로
[i pyonjirul hang-gong-upyonuro
this letter air mail by

보내주십시오.
[ponaejusipsio]
send please!

며칠 후에 영국에
[myochilhue yong-guge
how many days after England to
dochakamnigga]
reach?

나는 런던에 전화를
[nanun londone chonhwarul
I London to telephone

결려고합니다.
kollyogohamnida]
will call

벨리 대주면 좋겠습니다.
[bballi taejumyon choketsumnida]
quickly if connects will be good

아직 말이 끊나지 않았습니다.
[ajik mari ggunnaji anatsumnida]
still word finished not

I want to put through a call to London.

I want to make an urgent call.

I want to continue my call.

I want to send this telegram.

Where are the telegram forms?

Send this telegram, please.

Please send this letter by air mail.

How long will it take to reach England?
Money Exchange

Where can I change money?

I have some pounds.

I have some dollars.

Can I change it for Korean currency?

Yes.

How much will you change?

I will change 50 pounds.

Please change 20 dollars.

I want some small change.

問 [upyon] mail
편지 [pyonji] letter
항공편지 [hang·gongpyonji] air mail letter
엽서 [yopso] postcard
우표 [upyo] stamp
봉투 [pongtu] envelope
우편함 [upyonham] mailbox

문바꾸는곳 [tonbaggunungot]

어디서 돈을 바꿀 수 있습니까?
[odiso tonul paggulsu itsumnigga]
where money change can?

나는 영국돈을 가지고 있습니다.
[nanun yong·gukdonul kaigyoitsumnida]
I English money have

나는 달러를 가지고 있습니다.
[nanun ddallarul kaigyoitsumnida]
I dollar have

조선돈으로 바꾸어줄 수 있습니까?
[chosondonuro paggwojulsu itsumnigga]
Korean money into change could?

예.
[ye]
yes

 얼마나 바꾸겠습니까?
[olmana paggugetsumnigga]
how much will exchange?

파운드를 바꾸겠습니다.
[osip·paundurul paggugetsumnida]
50 pounds will change

달러를 바꾸주세요.
[isipddallarul paggwojusipsio]
20 dollars change please!

잔돈으로 바꾸주세요.
[chandonuro paggwojusipsio]
small money into change please!
돈을 여기로 주십시오. [tonul yogiro chusipsio] 
money here give please

돈을 받으십시오. [tonul padusipsio] 
the money receive please

고맙습니다. [komapsumnida] 
thank you

돈 [ton] money

리발소에서 [ribalsoeso]

어서 않으십시오. [oso anjusipsio] 
please sit down!

고맙습니다. [komapsumnida] 
thank you

면도를 하겠습니까 아니면 [myondorul hagetsumnigga animyon] 
shaving would have or

머리를 깎겠습니까? [morirul ggakgetsumnigga] 
the hair cut would have?

돌 다 부탁합니다. [tul ta putakamnida] 
two all request please!

파마를 약간 해주십시오. [pamarul yakgan. haejusipsio] 
permanent little make please!

머리를 씻겠습니까? [morirul ssitgetsumnigga] 
hair washed would have?

예, 부탁합니다. [ye putakamnida] 
yes request please

Please let me have the money.

Please, take the money.

Thank you!

수표 [supyo] signature

At the Hairdresser's

Please take a seat!

Thank you!

Would you care to have a hair cut or a shave?

Both, please!

I want to have a soft perm.

Would you care to have your hair washed?

Yes, if you please.
How much is it?

...won, please.

At the Doctor’s

Please take me to the hospital!

Please send for a doctor!

I don’t feel very well.

What’s wrong with you?

How long have you been ill?

I have been ill since yesterday.

What are you suffering from?

I’ve a headache.

I’ve a stomach-ache.

I have a pain here.
I've caught a cold.

I have a cough.

I have a toothache.

I have chills.

I have diarrhoea.

I feel dizzy.

Do you have any appetite?

I have no appetite.

Your pulse is rather fast.

You have a fever.

You've caught a cold.
병원에 입원해야 합니까?
[pyongwone ibwonhaeya hamnigga]
hospital to have to go?

여칠 안정해야 합니까?
[myochil anjonghaeya hamnigga]
how many days quiet have to keep?

이 약을 몇번
[i yagul myotbon
this medicine how many times

먹어요 합니까?
mogoya hamnigga]
eat have to

병원[pyong·won] hospital
약국[yakguk] pharmacy
의사[uisa] doctor
간호원[kanhowon] nurse
내과의사[naeggwauisa] physician
외과의사[oeggwauisa] surgeon
안과의사[amgwauida] oculist
구강과의사[kugang·gwauisa] dentist
신경과의사[singyong·gwauisa]
neurologist
피부과의사[pibuggwauisa] dermatologist
소아과의사[soaggwauisa] paediatrician
산부인과의사[sanbuingwauisa]
gynaecologist
병[pyong] illness

열[yol] temperature
맥박[maekbak] pulse
혈압[hyorap] blood pressure
처방[chobang] prescription
약[yak] medicine
주사[chusa] injection
붕대[pungdae] bandage
가제[kae] gauze
확지면[taljimyon] absorbent cotton
반창고[panchang-go] adhesive tape
요드탕크[yodutingku] iodine tincture
안마[anma] massage

인체[inche]

1. 몸[mom] The body

머리[mori] head
얼굴[olgul] face

목[mok] neck
어깨[oggae] shoulder

Human Body
팔[pal] arm
가슴[kasum] chest, breast
배[pae] belly
등[tung] back
심장[simjang] heart

2. 머리 [mori] The head
미리갈[morikal] hair
이마[ima] forehead
눈썹[nunsop] eyebrow
눈[nun] eye
코[ko] nose
입[ip] mouth
입술[ipsul] lips
이발[ibbal] teeth

3. 팔[pal] The arm
팔꿈치[palggumchi] elbow
손[son] hand
손가락[son-garak] finger
손바닥[sonbadak] palm
손톱[sontop] nail

4. 다리 [tari] The leg
범척다리[nopjokdari] thigh
무릎[murup] knee
장반지[changddanji] calf

길을 걷는 [kilmutgi]
로 가는 길을 대주십시오. | Please tell me the way
[...uro kanun kirul taejusipsio] to ...
평양역으로 가는 길이
[pyongyang joguro kanun kiri
Pyongyang Station to going way

어느것입니까?
onugosimnigga]
which is?

이것이 평양역으로 가는
[igosi pyongyang joguro kanun
this Pyongyang Station to going

길입니까?
kirimnigga]
way is?

이 거리는 어디로 갈니까?
[i korinun odiro kamnigga]
this road where to go

어느 방향으로 가야 합니까?
[onu panghyang uro kaya hamnigga]
which direction to must go?

나는 곧바로 가야 합니까?
[nanun kotbaro kaya hamnigga]
I straight go must?

나는 원쪽으로 돌아야 합니까?
[nanun oenjoguro toraya hamnigga]
I the left to turn must?

당신은 그대로 가면 됩니다.
[tangsinun kudaero kamyon toemnida]
you as it is when go become

여기서 ...까지는 멀니까?
[yogiso ...ggajinun momnigga]
from here ...till far is?

여기서 평양역까지
[yogiso pyongyang yokggaji
here from Pyongyang Station to

 얼마나 멀니까?
[olmana momnigga]
how far is?

Which is the way to
Pyongyang Station?

Is this the way to
Pyongyang Station?

Where does this road lead to?

Which way should I go?

Should I go straight on?

Should I turn left?

Please going straight on.

Is ... far from here?

How far is it from
here to Pyongyang Station?
여기서 대략 1킬로미터입니다. [yogiso taeryak hankirometoimnida]
here from about one kilometre is
여기는 어디입니까? [yoginun odiimnigga]
here which place is?
이 거리이름은 무엇입니까? [i koriirumun muosimnigga]
this street name what is?
이것은 무슨 집입니까? [igosun musun chibimnigga]
this what house is?
동쪽 tongjjok east
서쪽 sojjok west
남쪽 namjjok south
북쪽 pukjjok north
오른쪽의 오른쪽 orunj jogui] [orunj jogui] [orunj jogui] right
왼쪽의 왼쪽 oenjjogui) [oenjjogui] [oenjjogui]
g구역 kuyok district left
길 kil road
거리 kori street
상점거리 sangjomgori shopping street
인도 indo pavement
십자로 sipjaro crossroads
전능길 konnumgil pedestrian crossing

Notices and Signs
[kwang-go mit kanpan]
광고 kwang-go] Announcement, Notice, Advertisement
나가는곳 naganungot] Exit
들어가는 곳 [turoganungot] Entrance
진너가는 곳 [konnoganun·got] Crossing
섯! [sot] Stop!
들어오지 마십시오! [turoojimasio] No admittance!
담배 피우지 말것! [tambaepiuji malgot] No smoking!
버스정류소 [bbosujongryuso] Bus Stop
택시정류소 [taeksjongryuso] Taxi Stand
접심시간 [chomsimsigan] Dinner Hour
쉬는 날 [swinunnal] Closed

택시 및 빴스 [taeksi mit bbosu]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>택시정류소가 어디입니까? [taeksjongryusoga odiimnigga] the taxi stand which place is?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>택시를 불러주십시오. [taeksrul pullojusipsio] a taxi call please!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>나를 ...까지 태워다주십시오. [narul ...ggaji taewodajusipsio] me ...till carry please!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>여기서 나를 좀 기다려주십시오. [yogiso narul chom kidaryojusipsio] here me a moment wait please!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>곧바로 가십시오. [kotbaro kasipsio] straight go on please!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>다음 교차점에서 오른쪽으로 돌아주십시오. [taum kyochajomeso orunjjoguro to turnargsipso] the next crossing at the right to turn!</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Taxis and Buses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Where is the taxi stand?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Call a taxi, please!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Please take me to ...!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Please wait a moment for me here.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Go straight on, please!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turn to the right at the next crossing!</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Hurry up, please!

Stop here, please!

What is the fare?

Where is the bus stop for...

How many stops is it from here?

택시 [taeksi] taxi
시내버스 [sinaebbosu] city bus
시외버스 [sioebbosu] long-distance bus, suburb service bus
무궤도전차 [mugwedojoncha] trolley bus

시내구경 [sinaegugyong]

전차 [choncha] streetcar
지하철도 [chihacholdo] underground railway, subway
버스정류소 [bbosujongryuso] bus stop

City Sightseeing

Please tell me some tourist resorts.
나는 만경대를 방문 합니다.

I want to visit Mangyongdae.

나는 주체사상탑을 보았습니다.

I want to see the Tower of the Juche Idea.

나는 국제친선전람관을 방문하였습니다.

I want to visit the International Friendship Exhibition.

나는 김일성경기장으로 갔습니다.

I want to go to Kim Il Sung Stadium.

나는 인민대학습당을 보았습니다.

I want to see the Grand People’s Study House.

63
나는 서해감문을 보았으면 [nanun sohaegammunul poassumyon]
I want to see
the West
Sea Barrage.

합니다. [hamnida]
want

나는 백두산(금강산)으로 [nanun paekdusan(kumgangsan)uro]
I want to go to Mt. Paekdu(Mt. Kumgang).

갔으면 합니다. [kassumyon hamnida]
to go want

영어로 된 안내서를 [yong·oro toen annaesorul]
English in a guidebook

주심시오. [chusipsio]
give please!

영어를 아는 안내원을 [yong·orul anun annaewonul]
English knowing guide

불여주심시오. [puchyoj usipsio]
give please!

시내관광버스가 있습니까? [sinaegwan·gwangbbosuga itsumnigga]
city sightseeing bus is there?

버스가 언제 떠나니까? [bbosuga onje ddonamnigga]
the bus when start?

버스가 언제 돌아옵니까? [bbosuga onje toraomnigga]
the bus when get back?

표값은 얼마나입니까? [pyogapsun olmaimnigga]
ticket price how much is?

이것은 무엇입니까? [igosun muosimnigga]
this what is?
What is that?

Theatre

What's on now?

What's on now at the Pyongyang Grand Theatre?

Where can I see an opera?

What time does the performance begin?

What time does the performance end?

How long does it last?

I want a good seat.
Please show me to my seat!

How long is the interval?

Did you like the performance?

Did you like the concert?

Did you like the film?

.Inventory

극장[kukjang] theatre
평양대극장[pyongyangdaegukjang] Pyongyang Grand Theatre
교예극장[kyoeyegukjang] circus
영화관[yonghwagwan] cinema
공연논서[kong·yonsunso] programme
공연[kong·yon] play
음악회[umakoe] concert
가극[kaguk] opera
연극[yon·guk] drama
영화[yonghwa] film
음악[umak] music
민요[minyo] folk song
고전음악[kojonumak] classical music
경음악[kyong·umak] light music
민족무용[minjongmuyong] folk dance
바레무용[paremuyong] ballet
교예[kyoye] circus

Photographing

May I take a picture here?

Would you mind posing with me?

사진찍기[sajinjjikgi]

여기서 사진을 찍어도 돼니가?
yogiso sajinul jjigodo toemnigga
here a photograph take may?

저와 함께 사진을 찍어보세요.
[chowa hamgge sajinul me with together photograph

jjigupsida]
let's take!
명승지 [myongsungji] famous spots
사적지 [sajokji] historical places
기념비 [kinyombi] monument
박물관 [pangmulgwan] museum
미술박물관 [misulbangmulgwan] art museum, art gallery

물건사기 [mulgonsagi]

저와 함께 상점으로
[chowa hamgge sangjomuro
me with together the shop to
가지 않겠습니까?
kaji anketsumnigga]
go will not?

갑시다.
kapsida
let's go!
무엇을 사겠습니까?
[muosul sagetsumnigga]
what buy will?

나는 ...을 사고 싶습니다.
nanun ...ul sagosipsumnida]
I ...to buy want

...을 어디서 살 수 있습니까?
[...ul odeso .salsu itsumnigga]
... where buy can?
어디서 모자와 신발을 살 수
[odeso mojawa sinbarul salsu
where hat and shoes buy

있습니까?
itsumnigga]
can?
모자를 사겠습니까?
[mojarul sagetsumnigga]
hat buy will?

...을 보여 주시겠습니까.
[...ul poyojusipsio]
... show please!

Shopping

Will you go shopping with me?

With pleasure.

What can I do for you?

I want to buy...

Where can I buy ...?

Where could I buy a hat and a pair of shoes?

Would you like to buy a hat?

Please show me...
다른 것을 보여주십시오.
[tarun gosul poyojusipsio]
another one show please!

나는 이것을 가지겠습니까.
[nanun igosul kajigetsumnida]
I this take will

 얼마나 입니까?
[olmaimningga]
how much is?

 이것은 얼마나 입니까?
[igosun olmaimningga]
this how much is?

저것은 얼마나 입니까?
[chogosun olmaimningga]
that how much is?

조영사전이
[choyongsajoni
the Korean-English dictionary

있습니까?
itsumningga]
is there?

조선지도가 있습니까?
[chosonjidoja itsumningga]
Korean map is there?

이 책의 영문판이
[i chaegui yongmunpani
this book of the English edition

있습니까?
itsumningga]
is there?

예, 이것이 영문판입니다.
[ye igosi yongmunpanimnida]
yes this an English edition is

그것을 보여주십시오.
[kugosul poyojusipsio]
it show please

값은 얼마나 입니까?
[kapsun olmaimningga]
the price how much is?

Please show me another one!

I will take this.

How much is that?

What's the price of this one?

What's the price of that one?

Have you a Korean-English dictionary?

Have you a map of Korea?

Have you got the English edition of this book?

Yes, this is an English edition.

Please let me see it!

What's the price, please!
한부 사겠습니다.
a copy will buy

이 시계를 고쳐주십시오.
this watch repair please!

이 필름을 현상해주십시오.
this film develop please!

 언제면 됩니다가?
when is ready?

백화점 [paekwajom] department store

기념품 [kinyompum] souvenir

그림 [kurim] picture

신발 [sinbal] shoes

신발상점 [sinbalsangjom] shoe shop

시계 [sigye] watch

시계상점 [sigyesangjom] watch shop

책 [chaek] book

책방 [chaekbang] book shop

놀이감 [noriggam] toy

인형 [inhyong] doll

만년필 [mannyonpil] fountain-pen

화장품 [hwajangpum] cosmetic

俭약 [chiyak] toothpaste

치솔 [chissol] toothbrush

면도칼 [myondokal] razor

빗 [pit] comb

세면수건 [semyonsugon] towel

손수건 [sonsugon] handkerchief

양복점 [yangbokjom] tailor shop

넥타이 [nektai] necktie

모자 [moja] hat

장갑 [chang·gap] gloves

긴양말 [kinyangmal] stockings

짧은양말 [jjalbunyangmal] socks

속내의 [songnaeui] underwear

사진용품상점 [sajinyongpumsangjom] camera shop
1. The cardinal numbers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean number</th>
<th>The pure Korean cardinal numbers</th>
<th>The cardinal numbers derived from hieroglyphic characters</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>하나 [hana]</td>
<td>한 [han]</td>
<td>one</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>두 [tul]</td>
<td>두 [tu]</td>
<td>two</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>셋 [set]</td>
<td>세 [se]</td>
<td>three</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>넷 [net]</td>
<td>네 [ne]</td>
<td>four</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>다섯 [tasot]</td>
<td>다섯 [tasot]</td>
<td>five</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>여섯 [yosot]</td>
<td>여섯 [yosot]</td>
<td>six</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>일곱 [ilgop]</td>
<td>일곱 [ilgop]</td>
<td>seven</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>여덟 [yodol]</td>
<td>여덟 [yodol]</td>
<td>eight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>아홉 [ahop]</td>
<td>아홉 [ahop]</td>
<td>nine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>열 [yol]</td>
<td>열 [yol]</td>
<td>ten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>열하나</td>
<td>열한</td>
<td>십일</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>열둘</td>
<td>열두</td>
<td>십이</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>열셋</td>
<td>열세</td>
<td>십삼</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>열넷</td>
<td>열네</td>
<td>십사</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>열다섯</td>
<td>열다섯</td>
<td>십오</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>열여섯</td>
<td>열여섯</td>
<td>십육</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>열일곱</td>
<td>열일곱</td>
<td>십칠</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>열여덟</td>
<td>열여덟</td>
<td>십팔</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>열아홉</td>
<td>열아홉</td>
<td>십구</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>스물</td>
<td>스무</td>
<td>이십</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>스물하나</td>
<td>스물한</td>
<td>이십일</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>스물둘</td>
<td>스물두</td>
<td>이십이</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>서른</td>
<td>서른</td>
<td>삼십</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>마흔</td>
<td>마흔</td>
<td>사십</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>심</td>
<td>심</td>
<td>오십</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>예순</td>
<td>예순</td>
<td>류십</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70</td>
<td>일흔</td>
<td>일흔</td>
<td>칠십</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80</td>
<td>여든</td>
<td>여든</td>
<td>팔십</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>아흔 [ahun]</td>
<td>아흔 [ahun]</td>
<td>구십 [kusip]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90</td>
<td>백하나 [paek•hana]</td>
<td>백한 [paek•han]</td>
<td>백 [paek]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>백둘 [paek•dul]</td>
<td>백두 [paekdu]</td>
<td>백일 [paegil]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101</td>
<td>백하나</td>
<td>백한</td>
<td>백이 [paegi]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>102</td>
<td>백둘</td>
<td>백두</td>
<td>이백 [ibaek]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>삼백 [sambaek]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>300</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>사백 [sabaek]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>오백 [obaek]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>500</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>육백 [ryukbaek]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>600</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>칠백 [chilbaek]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>700</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>팔백 [palbaek]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>800</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>구백 [kubaek]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>900</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>천 [chon]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1000</td>
<td>천하나 [chon•hana]</td>
<td>천한 [chon•han]</td>
<td>천일 [chonil]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10001</td>
<td>천하나</td>
<td>천한</td>
<td>만 [man]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>십만 [sim•man]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>백만 [paeng•man]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1000000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>천만 [chon•man]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10000000</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>백만</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2. The ordinal numbers:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>The ordinal numbers derived from hieroglyphic characters</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The pure Korean ordinal numbers</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>첫 (번)째 [chot(bon)jjae]</td>
<td>제일 [cheil]</td>
<td>first</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>두번째 [tubonjjae]</td>
<td>제이 [chei]</td>
<td>second</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>세번째 [sebonjjae]</td>
<td>제삼 [chesam]</td>
<td>third</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>네번째 [nebonjjae]</td>
<td>제사 [chesa]</td>
<td>fourth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>다섯 (번)째 [tasot(bon)jjae]</td>
<td>제오 [cheo]</td>
<td>fifth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>여섯 (번)째 [yosot(bon)jjae]</td>
<td>제육 [cheryuk]</td>
<td>sixth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>일곱 (번)째 [ilgop(bon)jjae]</td>
<td>제칠 [chechil]</td>
<td>seventh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>여덟 (번)째 [yodol(bon)jjae]</td>
<td>제팔 [chepal]</td>
<td>eighth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>아홉 (번)째 [ahop(bon)jjae]</td>
<td>제구 [chegu]</td>
<td>ninth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>열 (번)째 [yol(bon)jjae]</td>
<td>제십 [chesip]</td>
<td>tenth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>열한 (번)째 [yolhan(bon)jjae]</td>
<td>제십일 [chesibil]</td>
<td>eleventh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>열두 (번)째 [yoldu(bon)jjae]</td>
<td>제십이 [chesibi]</td>
<td>twelfth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>스무 (번)째 [sum(bon)jjae]</td>
<td>제십이 [chesib]</td>
<td>twelfth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>서른 (번)째 [sorun(bon)jjae]</td>
<td>제삼십 [chesamsip]</td>
<td>thirtieth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>마흔 (번)째 [mahun(bon)jjae]</td>
<td>제사십 [chesasip]</td>
<td>fortieth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>십 (번)째 [swin(bon)jjae]</td>
<td>제오십 [cheosip]</td>
<td>fiftieth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오십 (번)째 [yesun(bon)jjae]</td>
<td>제육십 [cheryuksip]</td>
<td>sixtyieth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>일흔 (번)째 [ilhun(bon)jjae]</td>
<td>제칠십 [chechilsip]</td>
<td>seventieth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>여든 (번)째 [yodun(bon)jjae]</td>
<td>제팔십 [chebpsip]</td>
<td>eightieth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>아흔 (번)째 [ahun(bon)jjae]</td>
<td>제구십 [chekusip]</td>
<td>ninetieth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>벌 (번)째 [paek(bon)jjae]</td>
<td>제일백 [cheilbaek]</td>
<td>hundredth</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Money

1. Coins:
   1 전 [iljon] 1jon
   5 전 [ojon] 5jon
   10 전 [sipjon] 10jon
   50 전 [osipjon] 50jon
   1 원 [irwon] 1won

2. Paper money:
   1 원 [irwon] 1won
   5 원 [owon] 5won
   10 원 [sibwon] 10won
   50 원 [osibwon] 50won
   100 원 [paegwon] 100won

시간 [sigan]

시계 [sigye] clock
일 [il] day
시간 [sigan] hour
시 [si] o’clock

분 [pun] minute
초 [cho] second
년 [nyon] year
월 [wol] month

1 시입니다. [hansiiimnida]
   one o’clock

2 시입니다. [tusiimnida]
two o’clock

3 시입니다. [sesiimnida]
three o’clock

4 시입니다. [nesiimnida]
four o’clock

5 시입니다. [tasotsiiimnida]
five o’clock

6 시입니다. [yosotsiiimnida]
six o’clock

7 시입니다. [ilgopsiiimnida]
seven o’clock

It is one o’clock.

It is two o’clock.

It is three o’clock.

It is four o’clock.

It is five o’clock.

It is six o’clock.

It is seven o’clock.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>시간</th>
<th>표현</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>8시</td>
<td>It is eight o'clock.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9시</td>
<td>It is nine o'clock.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10시</td>
<td>It is ten o'clock.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11시</td>
<td>It is eleven o'clock.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12시</td>
<td>It is twelve o'clock.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>What time is it?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1시</td>
<td>It's past one.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1시 15분</td>
<td>It's a quarter past one.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2시</td>
<td>It's a quarter to two.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3시</td>
<td>It's half past three.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4시</td>
<td>It's ten minutes to four.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

몇 시입니까? (What time is it?)

한시가 지났습니다. (It’s past one.)
한시 十五分입니다. (It’s a quarter past one.)
한시半 입니다. (It’s a quarter to two.)

한시 다섯입니다. (It’s half past three.)

네시 다섯입니다. (It’s ten minutes to four.)
It's twenty minutes past five.

오늘 [onul] today
어제 [oje] yesterday
그제제 [kujogge] the day before yesterday
завтра [raei] tomorrow
모레 [more] the day after tomorrow
지난주 [chinanju] last week
지난달 [chinandal] last month
지난해 [chinanhae] last year

Weather

What's the weather like today?
It's fine today.
It's bad today.
It's warm.
It's cold.
It's sultry.
It's windy.
There’s lightning.

There’s thunder.

It will rain.

It’s raining.

It’s snowing.

**Four Seasons**

봄 [pom] spring
여름 [yorum] summer
가을 [kaul] autumn, fall
겨울 [kyoul] winter

**Months**

What’s the date today?

Today is July 25.

1 월 [irwol] January
2 월 [iwol] February
3 월 [samwol] March
4 월 [sawol] April
5 월 [owol] May
6 월 [ryuwol] June

7 월 [chirwol] July
8 월 [parwol] August
9 월 [kuwol] September
10 월 [siwol] October
11 월 [sibirwol] November
12 월 [sibiwol] December
Days of the Week

오늘은 무엇요일입니까?
[onurun musun yoirimniga]
Today what day of the week is?
오늘은월요일입니다.
[onurun woryoirimnida]
Today is Monday.
월요일[woryoil] Monday
화요일[hwayoil] Tuesday
수요일[suyoil] Wednesday
목요일[mogyoil] Thursday
금요일[kumyoil] Friday
토요일[toyoil] Saturday
일요일[iryoil] Sunday

GRAMMAR

LESSON 1

THE NOUN

14 In the Korean language there is no gender.
There is neither definite nor indefinite article.

15 The plural of the noun is formed by attaching the plural ending 들[dul] to the singular of the noun.

16 The plural ending shows that the objects are two or more.

for example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>singular</th>
<th>plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>사람 [saram] a man</td>
<td>사람들 [saramdul] men</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>아이 [ai] a child</td>
<td>아이들 [aidul] children</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>나무 [namu] a tree</td>
<td>나무들 [namudul] trees</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>말 [mal] a horse</td>
<td>말들 [maldul] horses</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

78
THE DECLENSION OF
THE NOUN IN THE SINGULAR

17 The nominative for the question who or what has the nominative ending: 개서. 가. 이

- 개서 [ggeso] (when a sense of respect is given to the word to be declined)
  for example:
  아버님 개서 [abonimggeso] father
  explanation:
  아버님 + 개
  noun   nominative ending

- 가 [ga] (when the word to be declined ends in a vowel)
  for example:
  ○ 아이가 [aiga] child
  explanation:
  아이 + 가
  noun   nominative ending

  ○ 나무가 [namuga] tree
  explanation:
  나무 + 가
  noun   nominative ending

- 이 [i] (when the word to be declined ends in a consonant)
  for example:
  ○ 사람이 [sarami] man
  explanation:
  사람 + 이
  noun   nominative ending

  ○ 말이 [mari] horse
  explanation:
  말 + 이
  noun   nominative ending
18 The accusative for the question *whom* or *what* has the accusative ending: 른,을

- 른 [rul] (*when the word to be declined ends in a vowel*)
  for example:
  ○ 아이들 [airul] child
    explanation:
    아이 + 른
    noun accusative ending
  ○ 나무들 [namurul] tree
    explanation:
    나무 + 른
    noun accusative ending

- 을 [ul] (*when the word to be declined ends in a consonant*)
  for example:
  ○ 사람들 [saramul] man
    explanation:
    사람 + 을
    noun accusative ending
  ○ 말들 [marul] horse
    explanation:
    말 + 을
    noun accusative ending

19 The genitive for the question *whose* has the genitive ending: 의

- 의 [ui]
  for example:
  ○ 아이의 [aiui] of a child, child’s
    explanation:
    아이 + 의
    noun genitive ending
  ○ 나무의 [namuuui] of a tree
    explanation:
    나무 + 의
    noun genitive ending
○ 사람의 [saramui] of a man, man's

explanation:

사람 + 의

noun    genitive ending

○ 말의 [marui] of a horse

explanation:

말 + 의

noun    genitive ending

20 The dative for the question whom, where to, where or when has the dative ending: 개, 에게, 에

- 개 [gge] (when a sense of respect is given to the word to be declined)

for example:

아버지께 [abonimgge] to one's father

explanation:

아버지 + 개

noun    dative ending

- 에게 [ege] (when the word to be declined indicates an animate being)

for example:

○ 아이에게 [aiege] to one's child

explanation:

아이 + 에게

noun    dative ending

○ 사람에게 [saramege] to a man

explanation:

사람 + 에게

noun    dative ending

○ 말에게 [marege] to a horse

explanation:

말 + 에게

noun    dative ending

- 에 [e] (when the word to be declined indicates an inanimate being)
for example:

- 나무에 [namue] to a tree
  explanation:
  
  나무 + 에
  noun dative ending

- 평양에 [pyongyang.e] to Pyongyang, in Pyongyang
  explanation:
  
  평양 + 에
  noun dative ending

- 낮에 [naje] in the daytime
  explanation:
  
  낮 + 에
  noun dative ending

21 The locative for the question *where* or *from where* has the locative ending: 에게서, 에서

- 에게서 [egeso] (*when the word to be declined indicates an animate being*)
  for example:
  
  - 아이에게서 [aigeso] by one's child, from one's child
    explanation:
    
    아이 + 에게서
    noun locative ending

  - 사람에게서 [saramgeois] by a man, from a man
    explanation:
    
    사람 + 에게서
    noun locative ending

  - 말에게서 [maregeso] by a horse, from a horse
    explanation:
    
    말 + 에게서
    noun locative ending

- 에서 [eso] (*when the word to be declined indicates an inanimate being*)

  for example:
  
  - 나무에서 [namueso] on a tree, from a tree
explanation:

나무 + 에서

noun locative ending

○ 공장에서 [kongjang·eso] in a factory, from a factory

explanation:

공장 + 에서

noun locative ending

22 The instrumental for the question to what, as what, with what, through what, from what, what for or after what has the instrumental ending: 로

- 로 [ro] (when the word to be declined ends in a vowel or the consonant 꼬 [l])
when the word to be declined ends in a consonant other than the consonant 꼬 [l], the link- vowel 오 [u] is inserted (refer to 194) between the word to be declined and the instrumental ending 로 [ro].

the word to be declined + link- vowel 오 [u] + instrumental ending 로 [ro]

for example:

○ 동무로 [tongmuro] as a friend

explanation:

동무 + 로

noun instrumental ending

○ 손님으로 [sonnimuro] as a guest

explanation:

손님 + 오 + 로

noun link-vowel instrumental ending

○ 아이로 [airo] as a child

explanation:

아이 + 로

noun instrumental ending

○ 사람으로 [saramuro] as a man
explanation:

사람 + 오 + 로
noun link-vowel instrumental ending

○ 도끼로 [toggiro] with an ax

explanation:

도끼 + 로
noun instrumental ending

○ 삽으로 [saburo] with a shovel

explanation:

삽 + 오 + 로
noun link-vowel instrumental ending

○ 편지로 [pyonjiro] by a letter

explanation:

편지 + 로
noun instrumental ending

○ 우편으로 [upyonuro] by post

explanation:

우편 + 오 + 로
noun link-vowel instrumental ending

○ 철로 [chollo] of iron

explanation:

철 + 로
noun instrumental ending

○ 감기로 [kamgiro] because of a cold

explanation:

감기 + 로
noun instrumental ending

○ 병으로 [pyong-uro] because of illness

explanation:

병 + 오 + 로
noun link-vowel instrumental ending

○ 도시로 [tosiro] to the city

explanation:

도시 + 로
noun instrumental ending
○ 집으로 [chiburo] to one's home

explanation:

집  +  오
noun  link-vowel  +  로
instrumental ending

23 The coordinative case has the coordinative case ending:

와 / 과

- 와 [wa] and, with (when the word to be declined ends in a vowel)

for example:

○ 아버지와 어머니 [abojiwa omoni] father and mother

explanation:

아버지  +  와  어머니
noun  coordinative case ending  noun

○ 아버지와 가다 [abojiwa kada] go with father

explanation:

아버지  +  와  가다
noun  coordinative case ending  verb

- 과 [gwa] and, with (when the word to be declined ends in a consonant)

for example:

○ 사람과 말 [saramgwa mal] a man and a horse

explanation:

사람  +  과  말
noun  coordinative case ending  noun

○ 형과 가다 [hyong · gwa kada] go with brother

explanation:

형  +  과  가다
noun  coordinative case ending  verb

24 The vocative has the vocative ending: 이시여, 여, 이여, 아, 아

-이시여 [isiyo] (when a sense of respect is given to the word to be declined)

for example:

어머니 이시여! [omoniisiyo] mother!
explanation:
어머니 + 이시여!
noun vocative ending
여[yo] (when the word to be declined ends in a vowel; this is mostly used in written language)
for example:
누나여! [nunayo] sister!
explanation:
누나 + 여!
noun vocative ending
여[yo] (when the word to be declined ends in a consonant; this is mostly used in written language)
for example:
조국여! [chogugiyo] fatherland!
explanation:
조국 + 여!
noun vocative ending
아[ya] (when the word to be declined ends in a vowel; this represents a low form of courtesy (refer to 168) in colloquial language)
for example:
애야! [aeya] child!
explanation:
애 + 야!
noun vocative ending
아[a] (when the word to be declined ends in a consonant; this represents a low form of courtesy in colloquial language)
for example:
영철야! [yongchora] Yong Chol! (Yong Chol is a name)
explanation:
영철 + 야!
noun vocative ending
25 Example of the declension of a word to which a sense of respect is given:

아버님 [abonim] father

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nominative</td>
<td>아버님께서 [abonimggeso] one's father</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accusative</td>
<td>아버님을 [abonimul] one's father</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genitive</td>
<td>아버님의 [abonimui] of one's father, father's</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dative</td>
<td>아버님께 [abonimgge] to one's father</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>locative</td>
<td>아버님께서 [abonimegeso] by one's father, from one's father</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instrumental</td>
<td>아버님으로 [abonimuro] to one's father, as one's father</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coordinative</td>
<td>아버님과 [abonimgwa] one's father and, with one's father</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>case</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocative</td>
<td>아버님이시여! [abonimisiyo] one's father!</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

26 Examples of the declension of a word which ends in a vowel:

1. When the word to be declined indicates an animate being:

아이 [ai] child

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nominative</td>
<td>아이가 [aiga] one's child</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accusative</td>
<td>아이를 [airul] one's child</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genitive</td>
<td>아이의 [aiui] of one's child, child's</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dative</td>
<td>아이에게 [aige] to one's child</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>locative</td>
<td>아이에게서 [aigeeso] by one's child, from one's child</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instrumental</td>
<td>아이로 [airo] to one's child, as one's child</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coordinative</td>
<td>아이와 [aiwa] one's child and, with one's child</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>case</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocative</td>
<td>아이야! [aiya] one's child!</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2. When the word to be declined indicates an inanimate being:

나무 [namu] tree

| nominative | 나무 가 [namuga] a tree |
| accusative | 나무 를 [namurul] a tree |
| genitive | 나무 의 [namuui] of a tree |
| dative | 나무 에 [namue] to a tree |
| locative | 나무 에서 [namueso] on a tree, from a tree |
| instrumental | 나무 로 [namuro] of a tree |
| coordinative | 나무 와 [namuwa] a tree and, with a tree |
| case | not used |

27 Examples of the declension of a word which ends in a consonant:

1. When the word to be declined indicates an animate being:

사람 [saram] man

<p>| nominative | 사람이 [sarami] a man |
| accusative | 사람 을 [saramul] a man |
| genitive | 사람이 [saramui] of a man |
| dative | 사람이에게 [saramege] to a man |
| locative | 사람이에게서 [saramegeso] by a man, from a man |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Nominative</th>
<th>Accusative</th>
<th>Genitive</th>
<th>Dative</th>
<th>Locative</th>
<th>Instrumental</th>
<th>Coordinative</th>
<th>Vocative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Accusative</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genitive</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dative</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Locative</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Instrumental</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coordinative</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vocative</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. When the word to be declined indicates an inanimate being:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Nominative</th>
<th>Accusative</th>
<th>Genitive</th>
<th>Dative</th>
<th>Locative</th>
<th>Instrumental</th>
<th>Coordinative</th>
<th>Vocative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nominative</td>
<td>책 [chaek]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accusative</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genitive</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dative</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Locative</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Instrumental</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coordinative</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vocative</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**THE DECLENSION OF A NOUN IN THE PLURAL**

28 The declension of a noun in the plural is the same as the declension of the singular noun which ends in a consonant.
29 Example of the declension of a word to which a sense of respect is given:

아버지들 [abonimdul] fathers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Nominative</th>
<th>Accusative</th>
<th>Genitive</th>
<th>Dative</th>
<th>Locative</th>
<th>Instrumental</th>
<th>Coordinative</th>
<th>Vocative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

30 Examples of the declension of a word which indicates an animate being:

아이들 [aidul] children

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Nominative</th>
<th>Accusative</th>
<th>Genitive</th>
<th>Dative</th>
<th>Locative</th>
<th>Instrumental</th>
<th>Coordinative</th>
<th>Vocative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

소들 [sodul] cows

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Nominative</th>
<th>Accusative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>소들 이 [soduri] cows</td>
<td>소들을 [sodurul] cows</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genitive</td>
<td>소들의 [sodurui] of cows</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dative</td>
<td>소들에게 [sodurege] to cows</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>locative</td>
<td>소들에게서 [soduregeso] by cows, from cows</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instrumental</td>
<td>소들로 [sodullo] to cows, as cows</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coordinative</td>
<td>소들과 [sodulgwa] cows and, with cows</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocative</td>
<td>not used</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nominative</td>
<td>사람들 [saramduri] men</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accusative</td>
<td>사람들들 [saramdurul] men</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genitive</td>
<td>사람들들이 [saramdurui] of men</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dative</td>
<td>사람들들에게 [saramdurege] to men</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>locative</td>
<td>사람들들에게서 [saramduregeso] by men, from men</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instrumental</td>
<td>사람들들로 [saramdullo] to men, as men</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coordinative</td>
<td>사람들들과 [saramdulgwa] men and, with men</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocative</td>
<td>사람들들이여! [saramduriyo] men!</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nominative</td>
<td>말들 [malduri] horses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accusative</td>
<td>말들들 [maldurul] horses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genitive</td>
<td>말들들이 [maldurui] of horses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dative</td>
<td>말들에게 [maldurege] to horses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>locative</td>
<td>말들에게서 [malduregeso] by horses, from horses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instrumental</td>
<td>말들로 [maldullo] on horses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coordinative</td>
<td>말들들과 [maldulgwa] horses and, with horses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocative</td>
<td>not used</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

31 Examples of the declension of a word which indicates an inanimate being:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>nominative</th>
<th>accusative</th>
<th>genitive</th>
<th>dative</th>
<th>locative</th>
<th>instrumental</th>
<th>coordinative</th>
<th>vocative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

32 Table of the endings of the case of the noun:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>number of the word to be declined</th>
<th>singular</th>
<th>plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>case</td>
<td>갈시 [ggeso], 가 [ga]/Oi[i]</td>
<td>갈시 [ggeso], OI[i]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nominative</td>
<td>갈시 [ggeso], 가 [ga]/Oi[i]</td>
<td>갈시 [ggeso], OI[i]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accusative</td>
<td>들 [rul] (E [i]) / 을 [ul]</td>
<td>을 [ul]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case</td>
<td>Genitive</td>
<td>Dative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genitive</td>
<td>의[ui]</td>
<td>까[gge], 에게[ege], 예[e]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dative</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>locative</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instrumental</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coordinative case</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocative</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**WORD ORDER**

33 The predicate always lies at the end of the sentence. For example:

버스 가 *2  온다. *1
[bbosuga a bus onda]  | A bus comes.

**explanation:**

*1. 오 + 다 [oda] come
   stem + ending
   오 + 다 [다 - low declarative form of the final ending of the verb (refer to 90)]

온다 (after contracting the syllable 오 and the sound 다)

The predicate 온다 lies at the end of the sentence.

*2 버스 + 가
   noun + nominative ending

34 The subject usually lies at the beginning of the sentence. For example:

기차가* 온다.
[kichaga a train onda]  | A train comes.
explanation:

* 기차 + 가
noun nominative ending

The subject 기차가 lies at the beginning of the sentence.

35 The genitive always lies before the word it refers to.

for example:

O 아버지의* 책
[abojiui chaek]
the father of the book
explanation:

* 아버지 + 의
noun genitive ending

The genitive 아버지의 lies before the word 책 it refers to.

O 여성들의* 권리
[nyosongdurui kwolli]
women of right
explanation:

* 여성 + 들 + 의
noun plural ending genitive ending

The genitive 여성들의 lies before the word 권리 it refers to.

36 The object lies between the subject and the predicate.

for example:

학생이* 신문을* 본다.*3
[haksaeng-i sinmunul ponda]
a pupil the newspaper reads

A pupil reads the newspaper.

explanation:

*1 신문 + 을
noun accusative ending

The object 신문을 lies between the subject 학생이 and the predicate 본다.

*2 학생 + 이
noun nominative ending
LESSON 2

THE PERSONAL PRONOUN

37 The personal pronoun has different forms: singular and plural and in the form of courtesy.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>form of courtesy</th>
<th>To a superior</th>
<th>To a person of the same rank or to an inferior</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>person</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>speaker</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>singular</td>
<td>저[cho] I</td>
<td>나[na] I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plural</td>
<td>저희[chohui] we</td>
<td>우리[uri] we</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>person addressed</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>singular</td>
<td>너[no] you</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plural</td>
<td>너희[nohui] you</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

for example:

O 저는*1 [chonun] 감니다*2. [kamnida] I go.

explanation:
The speaker speaks to a superior.

*1 저 + 는
  personal pronoun  auxiliary  ending (refer to 185)
*2 가 + 다
  stem            ending

95
가 + 비다 [비다 — most deferential declarative form of the final ending of the verb (refer to 90)]

가다 (after contracting the syllable 가 and the sound 다)

나는*1

国土资源

I go.

explanation:
The speaker speaks to an inferior.

*1 나 + 는
personal pronoun

*2 가 + 다
stem

간다 [나다 — low declarative form of the final ending of the verb (refer to 90)]

간다 (after contracting the syllable 가 and the sound 다)

저희는*

世界

we go.

explanation:
The speaker speaks to a superior.

* 저희 + 는
personal pronoun

우리는*

world

we go.

explanation:
The speaker speaks to an inferior.

* 우리 + 는
personal pronoun

너는*

you go.

explanation:
The speaker speaks to an inferior.

* 너 + 는
   personal pronoun auxiliary ending

○ 너의는 * 간다.
   [nohuinun kanda] You go.
   you go

explanation:

The speaker speaks to inferiors.

* 너희 + 는
   personal pronoun auxiliary ending

38 당신[tangsìn] “you” is a noun. But it can be used as a personal pronoun.

for example:

당신은* 갑니다.
   [tangsìnun kamnida] You go.
   you go

explanation:

The speaker speaks to a superior.

* 당신 + 은
   noun auxiliary ending

동무[tongmu] “comrade” is a noun. But it can be used as a personal pronoun with the meaning “you”.

for example:

동무는* 간다.
   [tongmunun kanda] You go.
   comrade goes

explanation:

The speaker speaks to an inferior.

* 동무 + 는
   noun auxiliary ending

39 he, she, it, they (the person to be spoken about) are expressed as follows:

1. 그 [kû] he

   그 - demonstrative pronoun that

2. 그녀자 [ku nyoja] she
3. 그것[kugot] it


An incomplete noun is a noun which cannot express a complete meaning in itself and expresses a complete meaning only when another word lies before it as an attribute.

4. 그들[kudul] they


The declension of the personal pronoun is just the same as that of the noun (refer to 26, 27, 30, 31).

41 The declension of the personal pronoun 저[cho] “I” is the same as with a noun which ends in a vowel and indicates an animate being (refer to 26).

The personal pronoun 저[che] “I” is used in the nominative instead of the personal pronoun 저[cho] “I”. Not the nominative ending 가[ga] but the auxiliary ending 는[nun] is attached to the personal pronoun 저[cho] in the nominative.
The declension of the personal pronoun 나 [na] “I” is the same as with a noun which ends in a vowel and indicates an animate being (refer to 26).

The personal pronoun 네 [nae] “I” is used in the nominative instead of the personal pronoun 나 [na] “I”.

Not the nominative ending 가 [ga] but the auxiliary ending 는 [nun] is attached to the personal pronoun 나 [na] “I” in the nominative.

나 [na] I

The declension of the personal pronoun 저희 [chohui] “we”
is the same as with a noun which ends in a vowel and indicates an animate being (*refer to 26*).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>줄회가 [chohuiga]</th>
<th>줄회류 [chohuirul]</th>
<th>줄회의 [chohuuiui]</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nominative</td>
<td>줄회가 [chohuiga]</td>
<td>줄회류 [chohuirul]</td>
<td>줄회의 [chohuuiui]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accusative</td>
<td>줄회류 [chohuirul]</td>
<td>our</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genitive</td>
<td>줄회의 [chohuuiui]</td>
<td>our</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dative</td>
<td>줄회에계 [chohuiege]</td>
<td>us</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>locative</td>
<td>줄회에계서 [chohuiegeso]</td>
<td>by us, from us</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instrumental</td>
<td>줄회로 [chohuiro]</td>
<td>to us, as we</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coordinative case</td>
<td>줄회와 [chohuiwa]</td>
<td>we and, with us</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocative</td>
<td>not used</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The plural ending 줄 [dul] can be attached to the personal pronoun 줄회 [chohui] “we”. The declension of the personal pronoun 줄회들 [chohuidul] “we” formed by that is the same as with a noun which ends in a consonant and indicates an animate being (*refer to 27*).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>줄회들 [chohuidul]</th>
<th>줄회들 [chohuidul]</th>
<th>줄회들 [chohuidul]</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nominative</td>
<td>줄회들 [chohuidul]</td>
<td>줄회들 [chohuidul]</td>
<td>줄회들 [chohuidul]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accusative</td>
<td>줄회들 [chohuidul]</td>
<td>us</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genitive</td>
<td>줄회들 [chohuidul]</td>
<td>our</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dative</td>
<td>줄회들에계 [chohuiege]</td>
<td>us</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>locative</td>
<td>줄회들에계서 [chohuiegeso]</td>
<td>by us, from us</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instrumental</td>
<td>줄회들로 [chohuidullo]</td>
<td>to us, as we</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coordinative case</td>
<td>줄회들과 [chohuidulgwga]</td>
<td>we and, with us</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocative</td>
<td>not used</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

44 The declension of the personal pronoun 우리 [uri] “we” is the same as with a noun which ends in a vowel and indica-
The plural ending 들 [dul] can be attached to the personal pronoun 우리 [uri] “we”. The declension of the personal pronoun 우리들 [uridul] “we” formed by that is the same as with a noun which ends in a consonant and indicates an animate being (refer to 27).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>우리들 [uridul] we</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nominative</td>
<td>우리들이 [uriduri]  we</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accusative</td>
<td>우리들을 [uridurul] us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genitive</td>
<td>우리들의 [uridurui] our</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dative</td>
<td>우리들에게 [uridurege] us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>locative</td>
<td>우리들에게서 [uriduregeso] by us, from us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instrumental</td>
<td>우리들로 [uridullo] to us, as we</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coordinative case</td>
<td>우리들과 [uridulgwaw] we and, with us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocative</td>
<td>not used</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The declension of the personal pronoun 너 [no] “you” is the same as with a noun which ends in a vowel and indicates an animate being (refer to 26).

The personal pronoun 네 [ne] “you” is used in the nominative-
The declension of the personal pronoun 너 [no] "you" is the same as with a noun which ends in a vowel and indicates an animate being (refer to 26).

너 [no] you

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nominative</td>
<td>네가 [nega]</td>
<td>you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>너는 [nonun]</td>
<td>you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>너를 [norul]</td>
<td>you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>너의 [noui]</td>
<td>your</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accusative</td>
<td>너에게 [no·ege]</td>
<td>you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>너에게서 [no·egeso]</td>
<td>by you, from you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genitive</td>
<td>너로 [noro]</td>
<td>to you, as you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>너와 [nowa]</td>
<td>you and, with you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dative</td>
<td></td>
<td>not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>locative</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instrumental</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coordinative case</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocative</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The plural ending 들 [dul] can be attached to the personal...
pronoun 너희[nohui] “you”. The declension of the personal pronoun 너희들[nohuidul] formed by that is the same with a noun which ends in a consonant and indicates an animate being (refer to 27).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nominative</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accusative</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genitive</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dative</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>locative</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instrumental</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coordinative case</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocative</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

47 The declension of the noun 당신[tangsin] “you” is the same as with a noun which ends in a consonant and indicates an animate being (refer to 27).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nominative</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accusative</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genitive</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dative</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>locative</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instrumental</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coordinative case</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocative</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The plural form 당신들 [tangsindul] “you” (pl) of the noun 당신 [tangsin] “you” (sg) is formed by attaching the plural ending 들 [dul] to the noun 당신 [tangsin] “you” (sg).

The declension of the noun 당신들 [tangsindul] “you” (pl) is the same as with a noun which ends in a consonant and indicates an animate being (refer to 27).

당신들 [tangsindul] you

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>당신들이 [tangsinduri] you</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nominative</td>
<td>당신들 [tangsindul] you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accusative</td>
<td>당신들 [tangsindurul] you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genitive</td>
<td>당신들 [tangsindurui] your</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dative</td>
<td>당신들에게 [tangsindurege] you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>locative</td>
<td>당신들에게서 [tangsinduregeso] by you,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>from you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instrumental</td>
<td>당신들로 [tangsindullo] to you, as you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coordinative</td>
<td>당신들과 [tangsindulgwa] you and,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>with you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocative</td>
<td>당신들이여! [tangsinduriyo] you!</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

48 The declension of 그 [ku] “he” is the same as with a noun which ends in a vowel and indicates an animate being (refer to 26).

그 [ku] he

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>그가 [kuga] he</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nominative</td>
<td>그를 [kurul] him</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accusative</td>
<td>그의 [kuui] his</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genitive</td>
<td>그에게 [kuege] him</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dative</td>
<td>그에게서 [kuegeso] by him, from him</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>locative</td>
<td>그로 [kuro] to him, as he</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instrumental</td>
<td>그와 [kuwa] he and, with him</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coordinative</td>
<td>not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocative</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
49 The declension of 그녀 [ku nyoja] "she" is the same as with a noun which ends in a vowel and indicates an animate being (refer to 26).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Nominative</th>
<th>Accusative</th>
<th>Genitive</th>
<th>Dative</th>
<th>Locative</th>
<th>Instrumental</th>
<th>Coordinative Case</th>
<th>Vocative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>한국어</td>
<td>한국어 (ku nyojaga) &quot;she&quot;</td>
<td>한국어 (ku nyojarul) &quot;she&quot;</td>
<td>한국어 (ku nyojaui) her</td>
<td>한국어에게 (ku nyoja-ge) her</td>
<td>한국어에게서 (ku nyoja-geeso) by her, from her</td>
<td>한국어로 (ku nyojaro) to her, as she</td>
<td>한국어와 (ku nyojawa) she and, with her</td>
<td>not used</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

50 The declension of 그것 [kugot] "it" is the same as with a noun which ends in a consonant and indicates an inanimate being (refer to 27).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Nominative</th>
<th>Accusative</th>
<th>Genitive</th>
<th>Dative</th>
<th>Locative</th>
<th>Instrumental</th>
<th>Coordinative Case</th>
<th>Vocative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>한국어</td>
<td>그것 이 (kugosi) it</td>
<td>그것 을 (kugosul) it</td>
<td>그것 의 (kugosui) its</td>
<td>그것에 (kugose) to it</td>
<td>그것에서 (kugoseso) in it, from it</td>
<td>그것으로 (kugosuro) with it, through it, of it, because of it</td>
<td>그것과 (kugotgwa) it and, with it</td>
<td>not used</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

51 The declension of 그들 [kudul] "they" is the same as with a noun which ends in a consonant and indicates an animate
being (*refer to 27*).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Nominative</th>
<th>Accusative</th>
<th>Genitive</th>
<th>Dative</th>
<th>Locative</th>
<th>Instrumental</th>
<th>Coordinative Case</th>
<th>Vocative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>그들 (kudul)</td>
<td>그들이 (kuduri)</td>
<td>그들들 (kudurul)</td>
<td>그들들의 (kudurui)</td>
<td>그들에게 (kudurege)</td>
<td>그들에게서 (kuduregeso)</td>
<td>그들로 (kudullo)</td>
<td>그들과 (kudulgwa)</td>
<td>not used</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

52 The declension of **그녀자들** (ku nyojadul) "they" is the same as with a noun which ends in a consonant and indicates an animate being (*refer to 27*).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Nominative</th>
<th>Accusative</th>
<th>Genitive</th>
<th>Dative</th>
<th>Locative</th>
<th>Instrumental</th>
<th>Coordinative Case</th>
<th>Vocative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>그녀자들 (ku nyojadul)</td>
<td>그녀자들이 (ku nyojaduri)</td>
<td>그녀자들들 (ku nyojadurul)</td>
<td>그녀자들의 (ku nyojadurui)</td>
<td>그녀자들에게 (ku nyojadurege)</td>
<td>그녀자들에게서 (ku nyojaduregeso)</td>
<td>그녀자들로 (ku nyojadullo)</td>
<td>그녀자들과 (ku nyojadulgwa)</td>
<td>not used</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

53 The declension of **그것들** (kugotdul) they is the same as with a noun which ends in a consonant and indicates an inanimate being (*refer to 27*).
The genitive of the personal pronoun in Korean corresponds with the possessive pronoun in English.

for example:

- 나의* 아버지 
  [naui aboji] 
  my father

explanation:

* 나 + 의 (나 – personal pronoun 의 – genitive ending of the personal pronoun)

- 나의 아머니 
  [naui omoni] 
  my mother

- 나의 집 
  [naui chip] 
  my house

- 나의 동무들 
  [naui tongmudul] 
  my friends
Table of the endings of the case of the personal pronoun

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>case</th>
<th>singular</th>
<th>plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nominative</td>
<td>가 [ga]</td>
<td>가 [ga] / 아 [i]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accusative</td>
<td>롤 <a href="%E3%84%B9%5Bll%5D">rul</a></td>
<td>롤 <a href="%E3%84%B9%5Bll%5D">rul</a> / 롤 [ul]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genitive</td>
<td>의 [ui]</td>
<td>의 [ui]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dative</td>
<td>에게 [ege]</td>
<td>에게 [ege]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>locative</td>
<td>에게서 [egeso]</td>
<td>에게서 [egeso]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instrumental</td>
<td>로 [ro]</td>
<td>로 [ro]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coordinative case</td>
<td>와 [wa]</td>
<td>와 [wa] / 과 [gwa]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocative</td>
<td>여 [yo]</td>
<td>여 [yo] / 이여 [iyo]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

WORD ORDER

The genitive of the personal pronoun always lies before the word it refers to.

for example:

- 나의* 어머니 [nau-i omoni] my mother
- 우리의* 어머니 [uriui omoni] our mother

* 나의 or 우리의, the genitive of the personal pronoun 나 “I” or 우리 “we” lies before its relative word 어머니.
LESSON 3

THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN

57 The demonstrative pronouns are divided into three forms according to the distance between the speaker and the things indicated.

1. The demonstrative pronoun which indicates something existing in the vicinity of the speaker:
   오 [i] this, these
   여기 [yogi] this place

   for example:
   오 이 집이*1 나의 집이다*2
   [i chibi naui chibida] This is my house.
   this house my house is

   explanation:
   *1 오 집 + 이 (오 - demonstrative pronoun 집 - noun 이 - nominative ending)
   *2 집 + 이 + 다 [집 - noun 이 - exchanging ending(refer to 180) 다 - low declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form (refer to 94)]

   여기가*1 나의 고향이다*2
   [yogiga naui kohyang-ida] This is my native place.
   this place my native place is

   explanation:
   *1 여기 + 가 (여기 - demonstrative pronoun 가 - nominative ending)
   *2 고향 + 이 + 다 [고향 - noun 이 - exchanging ending (refer to 180) 다 - low declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form]

2. The demonstrative pronoun which indicates something existing in the vicinity of the person addressed:
   그 [ku] that, those
거기[kogi] that place

for example:

○ 그 사람 이* 나의 친구다.
[ku sarami naui chin-guda] | That man is my friend.
that man my friend is

explanation:

* 그 사람 이 (그 - demonstrative pronoun 사람 - noun 이 -
nominaive ending)

○ 거기가* 그의 고향이다.
[kogiga kuui kohyang·ida] | That is his native
that place his native place is

place.

explanation:

* 거기가 (거기 - demonstrative pronoun 가 - nominative ending)

3. The demonstrative pronoun which indicates something existing distant from the speaker and the person addressed:
저[cho] that, those
저기[chogi] that place

for example:

○ 저 집 이 나의 집 이다.
[cho chibi naui chibida] | That is my house.
that house my house is

○ 저기가 그의 고향이다.
[chogiga kuui kohyang·ida] | That is his native pla-
that place his native place is

ce.

58 The demonstrative pronouns are divided into two kinds according to the things indicated.

1. The demonstrative pronoun which indicates the object:
이[i] this, these
그[ku] that, those
저[cho] that, those

2. The demonstrative pronoun which indicates a place:
Table of the demonstrative pronouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>distance</th>
<th>something existing in the vicinity of the speaker</th>
<th>something existing in the vicinity of the person addressed</th>
<th>something existing distant from the speaker and the person addressed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kind</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>object</td>
<td>이 [i] these</td>
<td>그 [ku] those</td>
<td>지 [cho] those</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>place</td>
<td>여기 [yogi] this place</td>
<td>거기 [kogi] that place</td>
<td>저기 [chogi] that place</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

THE DECLENSION OF THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN

The demonstrative pronoun which indicates an object is used as an adjective and is not declined.

For example:

이 사람 [i saram] this man
그 나무 [ku namu] that tree
저 마을 [cho maul] that village

Explanation:

이, 그, 저 = demonstrative pronoun which indicates an object
사람, 나무, 마을 = noun
The demonstrative pronoun گ[ku]“that” which indicates an object can be also used substantively.

In this case the demonstrative pronoun گ[ku] “that” which indicates the object expresses the meaning of “he”. The declension of the substantively used demonstrative pronoun گ[ku] “he” is the same as with a noun which ends in a vowel and indicates an animate being.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>گ[ku] he</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nominative</td>
<td>گ가[kuga] he</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accusative</td>
<td>گ률[kurul] him</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genitive</td>
<td>گ의[kuui] his</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dative</td>
<td>گ로[kuro] to him, as he</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>locative</td>
<td>گ에게[kuege] him</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instrumental</td>
<td>گ에게서[kuegoso] by him, from him</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coordinative case</td>
<td>گ와[kuwa] he and, with him</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocative</td>
<td>not used</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The plural form گ들[kudul] “they” of the substantively used demonstrative pronoun گ[ku] “he” is formed by attaching the plural ending  들[dul] to the substantively used demonstrative pronoun گ[ku] “he”.

The declension of the plural form گ들[kudul] “they” of the substantively used demonstrative pronoun گ[ku] “he” is the same as with a noun which ends in a consonant and indicates an animate being:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>گ들[kudul] they</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nominative</td>
<td>گ들 이[kuduri] they</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accusative</td>
<td>گ들 을[kudurul] them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genitive</td>
<td>گ들 의[kudurui] their</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dative</td>
<td>گ들 에게[kudurege] them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case</td>
<td>Gendered Genderless</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>locative</td>
<td>그들 에게서[kuduregeso] by them, from them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instrumental</td>
<td>그들로[kudullo] to them, as they</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coordinative case</td>
<td>그들과[kudulgwa] they and, with them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocative</td>
<td>not used</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The plural form 이들[idal] of the demonstrative pronoun 이[i] “this” is formed by attaching the plural ending 들[dul] to the demonstrative pronoun 이[i] “this” which indicates the object and is used substantively. In this case the plural form 이들[idal] of the demonstrative pronoun 이[i] “this” which indicates the object has the meaning of “these men”.

63 The declension of 이들[idal] “these men” is the same as with a noun which ends in a consonant and indicates an animate being:

이들[idal] these men

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Gendered Genderless</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nominative</td>
<td>이들이[iduri] these men</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accusative</td>
<td>이들을[idurul] these men</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genitive</td>
<td>이들의[idurui] of these men</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dative</td>
<td>이들 예게[idurege] to these men</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>locative</td>
<td>이들 에게서[iduregeso] by these men, from these men</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instrumental</td>
<td>이들로[idullo] to these men, as these men</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coordinative case</td>
<td>이들과[idulgwa] these men and, with these men</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocative</td>
<td>not used</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

64 The declension of the demonstrative pronoun which indicates a place is the same as with a noun which ends in a
vowel and indicates an inanimate being:

**어기** [yogi] this place

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>nominative</th>
<th>accusative</th>
<th>genitive</th>
<th>dative</th>
<th>locative</th>
<th>instrumental</th>
<th>coordinative case</th>
<th>vocative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>어기 [yoga]</td>
<td>this place</td>
<td>어기 [yogirul]</td>
<td>this place</td>
<td>어기의 [yogiui]</td>
<td>of this place</td>
<td>어기에 [yogie]</td>
<td>to this place</td>
<td>not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>어기에서 [yogieso]</td>
<td>in this place, from this place</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>어기로 [yogiro]</td>
<td>to this place</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>어기와 [yogiwa]</td>
<td>this place and, with this place</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**거기** [kogi] that place

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>nominative</th>
<th>accusative</th>
<th>genitive</th>
<th>dative</th>
<th>locative</th>
<th>instrumental</th>
<th>coordinative case</th>
<th>vocative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>거기 [kogiga]</td>
<td>that place</td>
<td>거기 [kogirul]</td>
<td>that place</td>
<td>거기의 [kogiui]</td>
<td>of that place</td>
<td>거기에 [kogie]</td>
<td>to that place</td>
<td>not used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>거기에서 [kogieso]</td>
<td>in that place, from that place</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>거기로 [kogiro]</td>
<td>to that place</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>거기와 [kogiwa]</td>
<td>that place and, with that place</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**저기** [chogi] that place

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>nominative</th>
<th>accusative</th>
<th>genitive</th>
<th>dative</th>
<th>locative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>저기 [chogiga]</td>
<td>that place</td>
<td>저기 [chogirul]</td>
<td>that place</td>
<td>저기의 [chogiui]</td>
<td>of that place</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>저기에 [chogie]</td>
<td>to that place</td>
<td>저기에서 [chogieso]</td>
<td>in that place, from that place</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
instrumental
coordinative case
vocative

저기로 [chogiro] to that place
저기와 [chogiwa] that place and, with
that place
not used

Table of the endings of the case of the demonstrative pro-
noun which indicates place

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>number of the word to be declined</th>
<th>singular</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nominative</td>
<td>가 [ga]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accusative</td>
<td>루 [rul] (ㄹ[1])</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genitive</td>
<td>의 [ui]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dative</td>
<td>에 [e]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>locative</td>
<td>에서 [eso]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instrumental</td>
<td>로 [ro]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coordinative case</td>
<td>와 [wa]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocative</td>
<td>여 [yo], 여 [ya]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

WORD ORDER

The adjectively used demonstrative pronoun which indicates
the object always lies before the word it refers to.

for example:

115
이*사람 [i saram] this man

explanation:
* 이—adjectively used demonstrative pronoun
The adjectively used demonstrative pronoun 이 which indicates the object lies before the word 사람 it refers to.

67 The attribute always lies before the word it refers to.

for example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>자는*</th>
<th>아이</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[chanun</td>
<td>ai]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sleeping</td>
<td>child</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

explanation:
* 자 + 다 [cha da] sleep
stem ending
자 + 는 [눈—attributive ending of the verb in its present tense (refer to 147)]
The attributive ending 는 of the verb in its present tense is attached to the stem 자 of the verb 자다.
The attribute 자는 lies before the word 아이 it refers to.

68 The adverbial modifier usually lies after the subject and the object.

for example:

우리는 평양을 끝*1 방문합니다*2. | We will visit
[urinun pyongyang-ul kot pangmunhanmida] | Pyongyang soon.
we Pyongyang soon visit

explanation:
*1 The adverbial modifier 끝 lies after the subject 우리는 and the object 평양을.
*2 방문하 + 다 [pangmunha da] visit
stem ending
방문하 + 비니다
[비니다—most deferential declarative form of the final ending of the verb (refer to 90)]
LESSON 4

THE VERB

69 The infinitive of the verb in Korean takes the following form:

stem + ending 다 [da]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>example</th>
<th>explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>가다 [kada] (go)</td>
<td>가 다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오다 [oda] (come)</td>
<td>오 다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>먹다 [mokda] (eat)</td>
<td>먹 다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>주다 [chuda] (give)</td>
<td>주 다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>마시다 [masida] (drink)</td>
<td>마시 다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>공부하다 [kongbuhada] (learn)</td>
<td>공부 하 다</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

THE FORMS OF THE VERB

70 The verb has the following four forms:

1. The final form which lies at the end of the sentence and closes the sentence.

for example:

나는 집으로 갔다.*
[nanun chiburo kanda]  I am going home.
I home to go

explanation:
The final form 간다 is derived from the infinitive 가다.

가 + 다 [ka da] go
stem ending

간다 (after contracting the syllable 가 and the sound 다)

The low declarative form 란다 of the final ending of the verb is attached to the stem 가 of the verb 간다 instead of the ending 다 of the infinitive.

The final form 간다 lies at the end of the sentence and closes the sentence.

2. The connecting form, the ending of which connects words or phrases or clauses in a sentence.

For example:

나는 공장에서 일하다고*.

[nanun kongjang-eso ilhago*] I work at the factory at work and go home.

[나는 공장에서 일하다고*]

Explanation:

The connecting form 일하다고 is derived from the infinitive 일하다.

일하다 + 다 [ilha da] work
stem ending

일하다 + 고 [고: connecting ending of the verb (refer to 130)]

The connecting ending 고 of the verb is attached to the stem 일하다 of the verb 일하다 instead of the ending 다 of the infinitive.

The connecting ending 고 of the connecting form 일하다고 of the verb 일하다 connects the phrases, 공장에서 일하다 and 집으로 간다.

3. The attributive form which is added to the noun, pro-
noun or numeral

for example:

[chanun ai] sleeping child

explanation:

* The attributive form 자는 is derived from the infinitive 자다.

자 + 다 [cha da] sleep

stem ending

자 + 는 [는 - attributive ending of the verb in its present tense (refer to 147)]

The attributive ending 는 of the verb in its present tense is attached to the stem 자 of the verb 자다 instead of the ending 다 of the infinitive.

The attributive form 자는 of the verb 자다 is added to the noun 아이.

4. The form of the adverbial modifier which modifies the verb or the adjective

for example:

[ddami piga odut hurunda] The sweat flows as it rains.

explanation:

* The form of the adverbial modifier 오듯 is derived from the infinitive 오다.

오 + 다 [o da] come

stem ending

오 + 듯 [ 듯 - ending of the adverbial modifier of the verb or adjective (refer to 153)]

The ending of the adverbial modifier 듯 of the verb or adjective is attached to the stem 오 of the verb 오다 instead of the ending 다 of the infinitive.

The form of the adverbial modifier 오듯 of the verb 오다 modifies the verb 호른다.

비가 오듯 is the expanded adverbial modifier (refer to 227).
THE FINAL FORM OF THE VERB

71 The final form of the verb is the form which lies at the end of the sentence and closes the sentence. The final form of the verb makes no distinction of person or number. The tense of the final form of the verb is the present.

For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>person</th>
<th>number</th>
<th>singular</th>
<th>plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>speaker</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

explanation:

* The final form 간다는 derived from the infinitive 가다. 가 + 다 [ka da] go
  stem ending
  가 + 니다 [nida] - low declarative form of the final ending of the verb (refer to 90)
  간다는 (after contracting the syllable 가 and the sound 다)

THE FINAL ENDING OF THE VERB

72 The final ending of the verb is the ending of the final form
of the verb.
The final ending of the verb expresses the closing of the sentence.
73 The final ending of the verb can express four moods:
1. The declarative form
The declarative form is the mood in which the speaker informs another person of some fact, his own thoughts or his own feelings.

for example:

내가 간다 *
[naega] [kanda] go
I go

explanation:

* 가 + 다 [ka da] go
stem ending
가 + 디 [디 - low declarative form of the final ending of the verb(refer to 90)]
간다 (after contracting the syllable 가 and the sound 디)

2. The interrogative form
The interrogative form is the mood in which the speaker asks some fact or the thoughts or the feelings of another person.

for example:

당신이 갑니까 *?
[tangsini kamnigga] Are you going?
you go

explanation:

* 가 + 다 [ka da] go
stem ending
가 + 니까 [니까 - most deferential interrogative form of the final ending of the verb (refer to 102)]
갑니까 (after contracting the syllable 가 and the sound 니)

3. The suggestive form
The suggestive form is the mood in which the speaker
suggests to the person addressed that they should do some act together.

for example:

우리 가 가자*.
[uriga kaja] Let us go!
we let us go

explanation:
* 가 + 다 [ka da] go
stem ending
가 + 자 [자—low suggestive form of the final ending of the verb (refer to 119)]

4. The imperative form

The imperative form is the mood in which the speaker urges the person addressed to do some action.

for example:

나는 가라* !
[nonun kara] You go!
you go!

explanation:
* 가 + 다
stem ending
가 + 라 [라—low imperative form of the final ending of the verb (refer to 121)]

74 The final ending of the verb can express three degrees of courtesy:

1. The most deferential form

The most deferential form is used when the speaker regards the person addressed highly.

for example:

저는 평양으로 갑니다*.
[chonun pyongyang-u ro kamnida] I go to Pyongyang.
I Pyongyang to go

explanation:
* 가 + 다
stem ending
가 + 비니다 [비니다—most deferential declarative form of the final ending of the verb (refer to 90)]

جاب니다 (after contracting the syllable 가 and the sound 비)
The speaker is speaking to a superior.

2. The middle form of courtesy
The middle form of courtesy is used when the speaker regards the person addressed as his equal.

for example:

나는 평양으로 가오*.
[nanun pyongyang-uro kao] I go to pyongyang.

I go to Pyongyang.

explanation:

* 가 + 다
stem ending

가 + 오 [오—middle declarative form of the final ending of the verb (refer to 90)]

The speaker is speaking to a person at the same rank.

3. The low form of courtesy
The low form of courtesy is used when the speaker speaks to someone he regards as inferior.

for example:

나는 평양으로 간다*.
[nanun pyongyang-uro kanda] I go to pyongyang.

I go to Pyongyang.

explanation:

* 가 + 다
stem ending

가 + 라다 [라—low declarative form of the final ending of the verb (refer to 90)]

간다 (after contracting the syllable 가 and the sound 라)
The speaker is speaking to an inferior.

The final endings of the verb are subdivided into the final

123
endings of the declarative form, the final endings of the interrogative form, the final endings of the suggestive form and the final endings of the imperative form.

THE ADJECTIVE

76 The infinitive form of the adjective in Korean takes the following form:

\[\text{stem} + \text{ending} \, \text{다} \, \{\text{da}\}\]

for example:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{푸르} & + \, \text{다} \quad \{\text{puru da}\} \, \text{blue} \\
\text{stem} & \quad \text{ending} \\
\text{출결} & + \, \text{다} \quad \{\text{chulgop da}\} \, \text{merry} \\
\text{stem} & \quad \text{ending} \\
\text{밝} & + \, \text{다} \quad \{\text{pak da}\} \, \text{bright} \\
\text{stem} & \quad \text{ending}
\end{align*}
\]

THE FORMS OF THE ADJECTIVE

77 The adjective has the following four forms:

1. The final form which lies at the end of the sentence and closes the sentence

for example:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{하늘은} & \quad \text{푸르다}. \\
\text{the sky} & \quad \text{blue} \\
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\text{The sky is blue.}
\]

explanation:

* The final form 봄 로 다 is derived from the infinitive form 봄 로 다.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{푸르} & + \, \text{다} \quad \{\text{puru da}\} \, \text{blue} \\
\text{stem} & \quad \text{ending} \\
\text{푸르} & + \, \text{다} \quad \{\text{다-low declarative form of the final ending of the adjective (refer to 92)}\}
\end{align*}
\]
The low declarative form 다 of the final ending of the adjective is attached to the stem 푼르 of the adjective 푼르다 instead of the ending 다 of the infinitive form of the adjective.

The final form 푼르다 lies at the end of the sentence and closes the sentence.

The final form of the adjective in Korean corresponds to the form “copula + nominal part of the predicate” in English.

The final form 푼르다 in Korean corresponds to the form “is blue” in English.

2. The connecting form, the ending of which connects words or phrases or clauses in a sentence

for example:

하늘은 푼르고* [hanurun purugo the sky blue and]
내 마음은 졸겁다. [nae maumun chulgopda] my heart merry

The sky is blue and my heart is merry.

explanation:

* The connecting form 푼르고 is derived from the infinitive form 푼르다 of the adjective.

푸르 + 다 stem ending
푸르 + 고 [고−connecting ending of the adjective (refer to 130)]

The connecting ending 고 of the adjective is attached to the stem 푼르 of the adjective 푼르다 instead of the ending 다 of the infinitive form of the adjective.

The connecting ending 고 of the connecting form 푼르고 of the adjective 푼르다 connects the clauses 하늘은 푼르고 and 내 마음은 졸겁다.

3. The attributive form which is added to the noun, pronoun or numeral
for example:

\[
\begin{array}{|c|c|c|}
\hline
\text{purple} & \text{hanul} & \text{blue sky} \\
\text{blue} & \text{sky} & \\
\hline
\end{array}
\]

explanation:

* The attributive form-purple is derived from the infinitive form-pururdy of the adjective.

\[
\text{purple} + \text{다}
\]

\text{stem ending}

\[
\text{purple} + \text{L} \text{[L-attributive ending of the adjective in its present tense (refer to 149)]}
\]

\text{purple (after contracting the syllable 르 and the sound L)}

The attributive ending L of the adjective in its present tense is added to the stem-purple of the adjective-purple instead of the ending- of the infinitive form of the adjective.

The attributive form-purple of the adjective-purple is added to the noun-.

4. The form of the adverbial modifier which modifies the verb or the adjective

for example:

\[
\begin{array}{|c|c|c|}
\hline
\text{달이} & \text{밝게*} & \text{비친다.} \\
\text{[tari palge pichinda]} & \text{The moon shines brightly.} & \\
\text{the moon brightly shines} & \\
\hline
\end{array}
\]

explanation:

* The form of the adverbial modifier- 밝게 is derived from the infinitive form- 밝다 of the adjective.

\[
\text{밝} + \text{다} \text{[pak da] bright}
\]

\text{stem ending}

\[
\text{밝} + \text{게} \text{[게-ending of the adverbial modifier of the verb or adjective (refer to 153)]}
\]

The ending of the adverbial modifier- 게 of the verb or adjective is attached to the stem- 밝 of the adjective- 밝다 instead of the ending- 다 of the infinitive form of the adjective.

The form of the adverbial modifier- 밝게 of the adjective- 밝다 modifies the verb- 비친다.
The final form of the adjective is the form which lies at the end of the sentence and closes the sentence.

The final form of the adjective makes no distinction of person or number.

The tense of the final form of the adjective is the present.

For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>person</th>
<th>singular</th>
<th>plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>number</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>speaker</td>
<td>네가 크다.*</td>
<td>우리가 크다.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[naega kuda]</td>
<td>[uriga kuda]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I am big.</td>
<td>we big</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>person addressed</td>
<td>네가 크다.</td>
<td>너희가 크다.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[nega kuda]</td>
<td>[nohuiga kuda]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you big</td>
<td>you big</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>You are big.</td>
<td>You are big.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>person spoken</td>
<td>귀가 크다.</td>
<td>그들이 크다.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>about</td>
<td>[kuga kuda]</td>
<td>[kuduri kuda]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>he big</td>
<td>they big</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>He is big.</td>
<td>They are big.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Explanation:**

*The final form 크다 is derived from the infinitive form 크다 of the adjective.*

크 + 다 [kuda] big

*stem* ending
THE FINAL ENDING OF THE ADJECTIVE

79 The final ending of the adjective is the ending of the final form of the adjective.
    The final ending of the adjective expresses the closing of the sentence.

80 The final ending of the adjective can express two moods:

1. The declarative form
    The declarative form is the mood in which the speaker informs another person of some fact, his own thoughts or his own feelings.

    for example:
    나는 기쁘다.
    [nanun kibbuda] I am glad.

    explanation:
    * 기쁘 + 나
    stem ending
    [ 다 - low declarative form of the final ending of the adjective (refer to 92)]

2. The interrogative form
    The interrogative form is the mood in which the speaker asks some fact or the thoughts or the feelings of another person.

    for example:
    당신은 기쁠까요?
    [tangsinun kibbumnigga] you glad?

    Are you glad?
The final ending of the adjective can express three degrees of courtesy:

1. The most deferential form
   The most deferential form is used when the speaker regards the person addressed highly.

   for example:
   저는 기쁩니다*.
   [chunun kibbumnida] I am glad.

   explanation:
   * 기브 + 다
   stem ending
   기브 + 비나니 [비나니—most deferential interrogative form of the final ending of the adjective (refer to 104)]
   기름니다 (after contracting the syllable ㅂ and the sound ㅂ)
   The speaker is speaking to a superior.

2. The middle form of courtesy
   The middle form of courtesy is used when the speaker regards the person addressed as his equal.

   for example:
   나는 기뻐오*.
   [nanun kibbuo] I am glad.

   explanation:
   * 기브 + 다
   stem ending
   기브 + 비나니 [비나니—most deferential declarative form of the final ending of the adjective (refer to 92)]
   기름니다 (after contracting the syllable ㅂ and the sound ㅂ)
The speaker is speaking to a person at the same rank.

3. The low form of courtesy
The low form of courtesy is used when the speaker speaks to someone he regards as inferior.

for example:

나는 기뻐다.*

[nanun kibbuda] I am glad.

explanation:

* 기뻐 + 다
stem ending

기뻐 + 다 [다—low declarative form of the final ending of the adjective (refer to .92)]

The speaker is speaking to an inferior.

82 The final endings of the adjective are subdivided into the final endings of the declarative form and the final endings of the interrogative form.

THE VERBAL FORM OF THE NOUN, PRONOUN OR NUMERAL

83 The verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral is formed by attaching a final ending, a connecting ending or an attributive ending of the verbal form (refer to 94, 128, 151) to the noun, pronoun or numeral.

for example:

O 여기가 평양입니다.*

[yogiga pyongyang·mnida] It is Pyongyang.
this place Pyongyang is
explanation:
* 평양 + 이 + 비니다 [평양 - noun 이 - exchanging ending (refer to 180) 비니다 - most deferential declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form (refer to 94)]

평양 입니다 (after contracting the syllable 이 and the sound 비)

평양 입니다 is the final form of the verbal form of the noun 평양.

○ 그것은 나요.*
    [kugosun nayo]  It is me.
    it I is

explanation:
* 나 + 요 [나 - personal pronoun 요 - middle declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form (refer to 94)]

요 is the final form of the verbal form of the personal pronoun 나.

○ 조국은 하나다.*
    [chogugun hanada]  The fatherland is one.
    fatherland one is

explanation:
* 하나 + 다 [하나 - numeral 다 - low declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form (refer to 94)]

하나 다 is the final form of the verbal form of the numeral 하나.

○ 저는 기자가이고*
    [chonun kijaigo]  I am a journalist, and
    I a journalist am and
    이분은 의사입니다.
    ibunun uisaimnida
    this person a doctor is

explanation:
* 기자 + 이 + 고 [기자 - noun 이 - exchanging ending 고 - connecting ending of the verbal form (refer to 130)]
기자이고 is the connecting form of the verbal form of the noun 기자.

주체의 조국인* 조선 조선 한국의 지속인
[chucheui chogugin choson choson] Korea, the fatherland of Juche

**explanation:**
* 조국 + 이 + 라 [조국 - noun 이 - exchanging ending 라 -
attributive ending of the verbal form (refer to 151)]
조국인 (after contracting the syllable 이 and the sound 라)
조국인 is the attributive form of the verbal form of the noun 조국.

THE DIVISION OF THE VERBAL FORMS OF THE NOUN, PRONOUN OR NUMERAL

84 The verbal forms of the noun, pronoun or numeral are divided as follows:

1. The final form which lies at the end of the sentence and closes the sentence

for example:
조선은 주체의 조국이다.*
[chosonun chucheui chogugida] Korea is the fatherland of Juche.

**explanation:**
* 조국 + 이 + 라 [조국 - noun 이 - exchanging ending 라 -
low declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form (refer to 94)]
The final form 조국이다 lies at the end of the sentence and closes the sentence.

2. The connecting form, the ending of which connects the words or phrases or clauses in a sentence
for example:

저는 로동자이고*  
[chonun rodongjaigo  
I a worker am and  
йeбунун кисаймнida]  
this person, an engineer is

I am a worker, and he is  
an engineer.

explanation:

* 로동자 + 이 + 고  [로동자 — noun 이 — exchanging ending  
고 — connecting ending of the verbal form (refer to 130)]  
The connecting ending 고 of the connecting form 로동자이고  
connects the clauses, 저는 로동자이고 — and 이분은 기사입니다.

3. The attributive form which is added to the noun, pronoun  
or numeral

for example:

영웅의 나라인* 조선  
[yong-ung-ui narain choson]  
hero of land being Korea

Korea, the heroes’ land

explanation:

* 나라 + 이 + 라  [나라 — noun 이 — exchanging ending 라 — attributive ending of the verbal form (refer to 151)]  
나라인 (after contracting the syllable 이 and the sound 라)  
The attributive form 나라인 is added to the noun 조선.

THE FINAL FORM OF THE VERBAL  
FORM OF THE NOUN, PRONOUN OR  
NUMERAL

The final form of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or  
numeral is the form which lies at the end of the sentence  
and closes the sentence.
The final form of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral makes no distinction of person or number.

The tense of the final form of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral is the present.

For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Person</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Speaker</td>
<td>I am an Englishman</td>
<td>천은 영국 사람입니다. [chonun yong-guksaram imnida]</td>
<td>우리는 영국 사람들입니다. [urinun yong-guksaramdur imnida]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I am an Englishman</td>
<td>we Englishmen are</td>
<td>We are Englishmen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Person addressed</td>
<td>You an Englishman are</td>
<td>당신은 영국 사람입니다. [tangsinun yong-guksaramimnida]</td>
<td>당신들은 영국 사람들입니다. [tangsinurun yong-guksaramdurimnida]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>You are an Englishman</td>
<td>you Englishmen are</td>
<td>You are Englishmen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Person spoken about</td>
<td>He an Englishman is</td>
<td>그는 영국 사람입니다. [kunun yong-guksaram imnida]</td>
<td>그들은 영국 사람들입니다. [kudurun yong-guksaramdurimnida]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>He is an Englishman</td>
<td>he Englishmen are</td>
<td>They are Englishmen.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

THE FINAL ENDING OF THE VERBAL FORM OF THE NOUN, PRONOUN OR NUMERAL

The final ending of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral is the ending of the final form of the verbal
form of the noun, pronoun or numeral.

The final ending of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral expresses the closing of the sentence.

87 The final ending of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral can express two moods:

1. The declarative form
   The declarative form is the mood in which the speaker informs another person of some fact, his own thoughts or his own feelings.

   for example:
   조선은 주체로 조국이다.*
   [chosonun chucheui chogugida]  Korea is the fatherland of Juche.

   explanation:
   * 조국 + 이 + 다 [조국 - noun 이 - exchanging ending 다 -]
   low declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form (refer to 94)

2. The interrogative form
   The interrogative form is the mood in which the speaker asks some fact or the thoughts or the feelings of another person.

   for example:
   당신은 조선 사람들니까*?
   [tangsinun chosonsaramimnigga]  Are you a Korean?

   explanation:
   * 조선사람 + 이 + 브니까 [조선사람 - noun 이 - exchanging ending 브니까 - most deferential interrogative form of the final ending of the verbal form (refer to 106)]
   조선사람입니까 (after contracting the syllable 이 and the sound 브)
The final ending of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral can express three degrees of courtesy:

1. The most deferential form
   The most deferential form is used when the speaker regards the person addressed highly.

   for example:
   저는 영국사람입니다.*
   [chonun yong-guksaramimnida] I am an Englishman.

   explanation:
   * 영국사람 + 이 + 비나라 [영국사람 - noun 이 - exchanging ending 비나라 - most deferential declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form (refer to 94)]
   영국사람입니다 (after contracting the syllable 이 and the sound 비)

   The speaker is speaking to a superior.

2. The middle form of courtesy
   The middle form of courtesy is used when the speaker regards the person addressed as his equal.

   for example:
   나는 영국사람이오.*
   [nanun yong-guksaramio] I am an Englishman.

   explanation:
   * 영국사람 + 이 + 오 [오 - middle declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form (refer to 94)]

   The speaker is speaking to a person at the same rank.

3. The low form of courtesy
   The low form of courtesy is used when the speaker speaks to someone he regards as inferior.
for example:
나는 영국사람이다.*  
[ nanun yong.guksaramida]  
I am an Englishman.

explanation:
* 영국사람 + 이 + 다 [ 다 - low declarative form of the 
   final ending of the verbal form (refer to 94)]
   The speaker is speaking to an inferior.

89 The final endings of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral are subdivided into the final endings of the declarative form and the final endings of the interrogative form.

LESSON 5

THE DECLARATIVE FINAL ENDINGS OF THE VERB

90 There are the following declarative final endings to the verb:

1. The most deferential form:
   습니다 [sumnida]/니다 [mnida]
   1) 습니다 [sumnida] (when the stem of the verb ends in a consonant)
   for example:
   저는 사과를 먹습니다.*  
   [ chonun sagwarul moksumnida]  
   I an apple eat

   explanation:
   * 먹 + 다 [mok da] eat
     stem ending
     먹 + 습니다 (습니다 - most deferential declarative form

137
of the final ending of the verb

The stem 막 of the verb 막다 ends in the consonant ㄱ.

2) 빈니다 [mnida] (when the stem of the verb ends in a vowel)

for example:

○ 환영 합니다. [hwanyonghamnida] welcome

explanation:

환영 합니다 + 너다 (니다—most deferential declarative form of the final ending of the verb)
환영 합니다 (after contracting the syllable 합니다 ㅇ and the sound 냉)
The stem 환영하다 of the verb 환영하다 ends in the vowel 다.

○ 그는 편지를 씁니다.* [kunun pyonjirul ssumnida] he a letter writes

explanation:

* 쓰다 [ssu da] write

The stem 쓰다 of the verb 쓰다 ends in the vowel 다.

2. The middle form of courtesy:

오 [o] / 소 [so]

1) 오 [o] (when the stem of the verb ends in a vowel)

for example:

나는 가오. [nanun kao] I go.

explanation:
* 가 + 다 [ka da] go

stem ending

가 + 오 (오—middle declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

The stem 가 of the verb 가다 ends in the vowel 가.

2) 소[so] (when the stem of the verb ends in a consonant)

for example:

나는 사과를 먹소.* I eat an apple.

[munun sagwarul mokso]
I an apple eat

explanation:

* 먹 + 다 [mok da] eat

stem ending

먹 + 소 (소—middle declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

The stem 먹 of the verb 먹다 ends in the consonant 먹.

3. The low form of courtesy:

다 [da]

The sound 라[n] or the syllable 는[nun] is placed before this final ending in the present.

The final endings 라다[nda] and 는다[nunda] are formed by it.

The final ending 라다[nda] is attached to the stem of the verb which ends in a vowel.

The final ending 는다[nunda] is attached to the stem of the verb which ends in a consonant.

1) 라다[nda] (when the stem of the verb ends in a vowel)

for example:

나는 주체의 조국인 I go to Korea, the fatherland

[nunun chuchueui chogugin]
I Juche of the fatherland being

조선으로 간다.*

chosonuro kanda]
Korea to go
explanation:
* 가 + 다 [ka da] go

stem ending

가 + 냐 [nara] - low declarative form of the final ending of the verb

간다 (after contracting the syllable 가 and the sound 냐)
The stem 가 of the verb 가다 ends in the vowel 다.

2) 는다 [nunda] (when the stem of the verb ends in a consonant)

for example:
그는 밥을 먹는다.*
[kunun pabul mongnunda] He eats rice.
his rice eats

explanation:
* 먹 + 다 [mok da] eat

stem ending

먹 + 는다 (는다 - low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)
The stem 먹 of the verb 먹다 ends in the consonant ㄱ.

91 Table of declarative final endings of the verb

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>the most deferential form</th>
<th>middle form of courtesy</th>
<th>low form of courtesy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

remarks:
We have indicated here only such declarative final endings of the verb which are frequently used.

For the other declarative final endings of the verb, please refer to the appendix.
THE DECLARATIVE FINAL ENDINGS
OF THE ADJECTIVE

92 There are the following declarative final endings to the adjective:

1. The most deferential form:
   슬니다 [sumnida] / 니다 [mnida]

1) 슬니다 [sumnida] (when the stem of the adjective ends in a consonant)

for example:

처의 마음은 졸집 슬니다.*
[choui maumun chulgopsumnida] | My heart is merry.
my heart merry

explanation:

* 졸집 + 다 [julkop da] merry
stem ending

졸집 + 슬니다 (슬니다—the most deferential declarative form
of the final ending of the adjective)

The stem 졸집 of the adjective 졸집 nada ends in the consonant 냥.

2) 니다 [mnida] (when the stem of the adjective ends in a vowel)

for example:

하늘은 무릅니다.*
[hanurun purumnida] | The sky is blue.
the sky blue

explanation:

* 무르 + 다 [puru da] blue
stem ending

무르 + 니다 (밀다—the most deferential declarative form
of the final ending of the adjective)

무릅니다 (after contracting the syllable 냥 and the sound 무)

The stem 무르 of the adjective 무르다 ends in the vowel 무.

2. The middle form of courtesy:
어[о]/소[so]

1) 오[о](when the stem of the adjective ends in a vowel)

for example:

평양은 
[pyongyang-un ungranghao] 
Pyongyang 
magnificent

explanation:

* 옹장하다 + 다 [ungjangha da] magnificent 

The stem 옹장하다 of the adjective 옹장하다 ends in the vowel ㅓ.

2) 소[so](when the stem of the adjective ends in a consonant)

for example:

저 산은
[cho sanun nopsa] 
that mountain 
high

explanation:

* 높 + 다 [nop da] high 

The stem 높 of the adjective 높다 ends in the consonant 고.

3. The low form of courtesy:

d[da]

for example:

조선의 아침은 맛 다*.
[chosonui achimun makda] 
the Korean morning 
morning fresh 

explanation:

* 맛 + 다 [mak da] fresh 

142
Table of declarative final endings of the adjective

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>the most deferential form</th>
<th>middle form of courtesy</th>
<th>low form of courtesy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Remarks:**

We have indicated here only such declarative final endings of the adjective which are frequently used. For the other declarative final endings of the adjective, please refer to the appendix.

**The declarative final endings of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral**

There are the following declarative final endings to the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral.

1. The most deferential form:

   습니다 [sumnida] / 빗니다 [mnida]

   1) 습니다 [sumnida] (when the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral has the ending of the tense)

   For example:

   그는 대학생이었습니다. [kunun taehaksaeng iyotsumnida]  He was a student.

   explanation:
* 대학생 + 이 + 옛 + 습니다 (대학생—noun 이—exchanging ending (refer to 180) 옛—ending of the past tense (refer to 161) 습니다—most deferential declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form)

2) 맘니다 [mnida] (when the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral has no ending of the tense)

for example:

저는 영국사람 있습니다.*
[chonun yong.guksaramimnida] I am an Englishman.

explanation:

* 영국사람 + 이 + 맘니다 [영국사람—noun 이—exchanging ending 맘니다—most deferential declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form]

영국사람입니다 (after contracting the syllable 이 and the sound 이)

2. The middle form of courtesy:

요 [yo]
This final ending is used in spoken language when a person speaks with a sense of intimacy.

for example:

그는 나의 동무 요.*
[kunun naui tongmuyo] He is my friend.

explanation:

* 동무 + 요 (동무—noun 요—middle declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form)

3. The low form of courtesy:

다 [da]

for example:

○ 조선은 하나이다.*
[chosonun hanaida] Korea is one.
explanation:

* 하나 + 이 + 다 (하나 — numeral 이 — exchanging ending 다 —
  low declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form)

When the noun, pronoun or numeral to which the final ending
of the verbal form is attached ends in a vowel, the exchanging ending 다 can be omitted.
In the final form 하나이다 the numeral 하나 ends in the vowel 
다. Therefore 하나다 can be used instead of 하나이다.

95 Table of declarative final endings of the verbal form of the
noun, pronoun or numeral

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>the most deferential form</th>
<th>middle form of courtesy</th>
<th>low form of courtesy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

remarks:

We have indicated here only such declarative final endings of
the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral which are frequently used.

For the other declarative final endings of the verbal form of
the noun, pronoun or numeral, please refer to the appendix.

WORD ORDER

96 The declarative final form of the verb in the sentence is
the predicate, and it lies at the end of the sentence.

for example:

나는 주체의 조국인
[nanun chucheui chogugin
I Juche of the fatherland being
조선으로 간다*.
chosonuro kanda]
Korea to go

I go to Korea, the fatherland of Juche.
explanation:

* 가 + 다 [ka da] go
  stem ending

가 + 냐 [rae - low declarative form of the final ending
  of the verb (refer to 90)]

간다 (after contracting the syllable 가 and the sound 냐)

The final form 간다 of the verb 가다 in the sentence is the
  predicate, and it lies at the end of the sentence.

97 The declarative final form of the adjective in the sentence
  is the predicate, and it lies at the end of the sentence.

for example:

명 양은 아름다습니다*. [pyongyang-un arumdapsumnida] | Pyongyang is beautiful.
  Pyongyang beautiful

explanation:

* 아름답 + 다 [arumdap da] beautiful
  stem ending

아름답 + 슬니까 (슬니까 - most deferential declarative
  final ending of the adjective)

The final form 아름답슬니까 of the adjective 아름답다 in the sen-
  tence is the predicate, and it lies at the end of the sentence.

98 The declarative final form of the verbal form of the noun,
  pronoun or numeral in the sentence is the predicate, and
  it lies at the end of the sentence.

for example:

저는 학생대표입니다*. [chonun haksaengdaepyoimnida] | I am a student delegate.
  a student delegate am

explanation:

* 학생대표 + 이 + 비니다 [학생대표 - noun 이 - exchanging
  ending 비니다 - most deferential form of the final
  ending of the verbal form (refer to 94)]
The final form 학생대표입니다 of the verbal form of the noun 학생대표 is the predicate, and it lies at the end of the sentence.

LESSON 6
THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN

The interrogative pronouns are divided as follows:

1. The interrogative pronoun indicating a person

1) 누구 [nugu] who

누구 is substantively used.

for example:
당신 온 누구임니까*?
[tangsinun nuguimnigga] | Who are you?
you who are?

explanation:
* 누구 + 이 + 뷰니까 [누구-interrogative pronoun 이-exchanging ending 뷰니까-most deferential interrogative form of the final ending of the verbal form(refer to 106)]
누구임니까(after contracting the syllable 이 and the soundㅂ)

2) 아무 [amu] anyone; any

아무 “anyone” is used both substantively and adjectively.

for example:
○ 아무 도*1 그것을 모릅니까*2?
[amudo kugosul morumnigga] | Does nobody
anyone also it not knows?
know it?

explanation:
*1 아무 + 도 [아무-interrogative pronoun 도- auxiliary ending (refer to 185)]
* 모르 + 다 [moru da] not know

stem

ending

모르 + 빈니가 [빈니가—most deferential interrogative form of the final ending of the verb(refer to 102)]

모름니가 (after contracting the syllable 뷰 and the sound 뷰)

〇 아무 사람도* 그것을 [amu saramdo kugosul] any man also it

모름니가?

모름니가?

not knows?

explanation:

* 아무 사람 + 도

(아무—interrogative pronoun 사람—noun 도—auxiliary ending)
The adjectively used interrogative pronoun 아무 lies before the word 사람 it refers to.

2. the interrogative pronoun indicating a thing

무엇 [muot] what

무엇 is substantively used.

for example:

이것은 무엇입니다*?

[igosun muosimnigga] this what is?

explanation:

* 무엇 + 이 + 빈니가 (무엇—interrogative pronoun 이—exchanging ending 빈니가—most deferential interrogative form of the final ending of the verbal form)

무엇입니가 (after contracting the syllable 이 and the sound 뷰)

3. The interrogative pronoun indicating quantity

1) 얼마 [olma] how much, how many

얼마 is substantively used.

for example:

그것은 얼마나입니가*?

[kugosun olmaimnigga] it how much is?

How much is it?
explanation:

* 얼마 + 이 + 밈이 (얼마 — interrogative pronoun 이 — exchanging ending 밈이 — most deferential interrogative form of the final ending of the verbal form)

 얼마임니가 (after contracting the syllable 이 and the sound 을)

2) 몇 [myot] how many

몇 is used both substantively and adjectively.

for example:

〇 이것은 몇 입니까? [igosun myochimnigga] How many are there?

explanation:

* 몇 + 이 + 밈이 (몇 — interrogative pronoun 이 — exchanging ending 밈이 — most deferential interrogative form of the final ending of the verbal form)

 몇임니가 (after contracting the syllable 이 and the sound 을)

〇 그들은 몇 사람 입니까? [kudurun myot saramimnigga] How many people are they?

explanation:

* 몇 + 사람 + 이 + 밈이

(몇 — interrogative pronoun 사람 — noun 이 — exchanging ending 밈이 — most deferential interrogative form of the final ending of the verbal form)

 몇사람임니가 (after contracting the syllable 이 and the sound 을)

4. The interrogative pronoun indicating a place

어디 [odi] which place

어디 is substantively used.

for example:
당신은 어디에 갑니까?
[tangsinun odie kamnigga] Where are you going?
you, which place to go?

explanation:

*1 어디 + 에 ( 어디 — interrogative pronoun 에 — dative ending

*2 가 + 다 (ka da) go
가 + 비니까 (비니까 — most deferential interrogative form of the final ending of the verb)
갑니까 (after contracting the syllable 가 and the sound ㅂ)

5. The interrogative pronoun indicating time
언제 [onje] which time
언제 is substantively used.

for example:
그는 언제 옮니까?
[kunun onje omnigga] When is he coming?
he at which time comes?

explanation:

* the interrogative pronoun 언제 is in the dative form.
Accordingly the dative ending 에 of the interrogative pronoun 언제 was omitted. This is called the absolute case.

100 Table of interrogative pronouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>person</th>
<th>누구 [nugu]</th>
<th>who</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>아무 [amu]</td>
<td>anyone; any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thing</td>
<td>무엇 [muot]</td>
<td>what</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quantity</td>
<td>얼마 [olma]</td>
<td>how much, how many</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>몇 [myot]</td>
<td>how many</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>place</td>
<td>어디 [odi]</td>
<td>which place</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>time</td>
<td>언제 [onje]</td>
<td>which time</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
THE DECLENSION OF THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN

101 The declension of the interrogative pronoun is the same as with a noun (refer to 26; 27).

THE INTERROGATIVE FINAL ENDINGS OF THE VERB

102 There are the following interrogative final endings to the verb:

1. The most deferential form:

   슬니까 [sumnigga] / 문니까 [mnigga]

   1) 슬니까 [sumnigga] (when the stem of the verb ends in a consonant)

   for example:

   그는 사과를 먹 슬니까? [kunun sagwarul moksumnigga] he the apple eats?

   explanation:

   * 먹 + 다 [mok da] eat

   먹 + 슬니까 (슬니까 - most deferential interrogative form of the final ending of the verb)

   The stem 먹 of the verb 먹다 ends in the consonant -t.

   2) 문니까 [mnigga] (when the stem of the verb ends in vowel)

   for example:

   그는 펜지 를 쓰니까? [kunun pyonjirul ssumnigga] he the letter writes?

   explanation:
The stem of the verb :ssu da: ends in the vowel —.

2. The middle form of courtesy:

나 [na]

This final ending is used when a man asks something with friendly feeling.

for example:

그 는 자 나 *?
[kunun chana] he sleeps?

Is he asleep?

explanation:

* 자 + 나 [cha da] sleep
stem ending

자 + 나 (나 — middle interrogative form of the final ending of the verb)

3. The low form of courtesy:

느냐 [nunya]

for example:

동무 야 알 겪 느냐 *!
[tongmuya algennunya] comrade! Do you know?

Comrade! Do you know?

explanation:

* 알 + 느냐 [al da] know
stem ending

알 + 것 + 느냐 (것 — ending of the future tense 느냐 — low interrogative form of the final ending of the verb)

The ending of the future tense 것 expresses here not the meaning of the future, but the meaning of surmise.
104 There are the following interrogative final endings to the adjective:

1. The most deferential form:

   슬니까 [sumnigga] / 뒤니까 [mniigga]
   
   1) 슬니까 [sumnigga] (when the stem of the adjective ends in a consonant)
   
   for example:

   당신의 마음은 졸겹 슬니까*?  
   [tangsinui maumun chulgopsunmigga] Is your heart merry?

   explanation:

   * 졸겹 + 다 [julgop da] merry

   stem ending

   졸겹 + 슬니까 (슬니까 - most deferential interrogative form of the final ending of the adjective)
The stem of the adjective ends in the consonant 

2) 

for example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>하늘은</th>
<th>푸름니까?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[hanurun purumnigga]</td>
<td>Is the sky blue?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

explanation:

* 푸르 + 니 (nie — most deferential interrogative form of the final ending of the adjective) 
푸름니까 (after contracting the syllable 니 and the sound 니)

The stem 푸르 of the verb 푸르다 ends in the vowel — .

2. The middle form of courtesy:

가 [nga]

for example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>날씨가</th>
<th>나 뽀까*?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[nalssiga nabbun・ga]</td>
<td>Is the weather bad?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

explanation:

* 나뽀 + 니 (nie — middle interrogative form of the final ending of the adjective) 
나뽀가 (after contracting the syllable 뽀 and the sound 니)

3. The low form of courtesy:

1) 

This final ending is used for the adjective without any ending of the tense.

for example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>너는</th>
<th>기뽀 낼*?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[nonun kibbunya]</td>
<td>Are you glad?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

explanation:
* 기부 + 나 [kibbu da] glad
    stem ending
    기부 + 나 (나—low interrogative form of the final ending of the adjective)

2) 느냐 [nunya]
This final ending is used for the adjective with the ending of the tense.

for example:
나는 얼마나 기부겠 느냐? [nonun olmana kibbugennunya] How glad are you?
you how glad

explanation:
* 기부 + 나 [kibbu da] glad
    stem ending
    기부 + 결 + 느냐 (결—ending of the future tense 느냐—
    low interrogative form of the final ending of the adjective)

The ending of the future tense 결 has here not the meaning of the future, but the meaning of surmise.

105 Table of interrogative final endings of the adjective

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>the most deferential form</th>
<th>middle form of courtesy</th>
<th>low form of courtesy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>승낙까/ 비녀까 [sumnigga] [mnigga]</td>
<td>나가 [nga]</td>
<td>1) 나 [nya]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2) 느냐 [nunya]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

remarks:
We have indicated here only such interrogative final endings of the adjective which are frequently used.
For the other interrogative final endings of the adjective, please refer to the appendix.

155
THE INTERROGATIVE FINAL ENDINGS
OF THE VERBAL FORM OF THE NOUN,
PRONOUN OR NUMERAL

106 There are the following interrogative final endings to the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral:

1. The most deferential form:

   
   
   슬니까 [sumnigga] / 비니까 [mnigga]
   
   1) 슬니까 [sumnigga] (when the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral has the ending of the tense)

   for example:

   
   
   그는 대학생이었습니까*?
   
   [kunun taehaksaeng iyossunmigga] he a student was ?

   explanation:

   * 대학생 + 이 + 였 + 슬니까 (대학생 - noun 이 - exchanging ending 였 - ending of the past tense 슬니까 - most deferential interrogative form of the final ending of the verbal form)

   2) 비니까 [mnigga] (when the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral has no ending of the tense)

   for example:

   
   
   그는 영국 사람입니까*?
   
   [kunun yong guksaramimnigga] he an Englishman is ?

   explanation:

   * 영국 사람 + 이 + 입니까 (영국 사람 - noun 이 - exchanging ending 입니까 - most deferential interrogative form of the final ending of the verbal form)

2. The middle form of courtesy:

   
   
   는가 [nga]
for example:

이 꽃은 조선의 진달래인가?  
이 꽃은 조선의 진달래인가*?  
is this flower Korea of the azalia is?  
is this flower Korea of the azalia is?  

explanation:

* 진달래 + 이 + 늘가 (진달래 - noun 이 - exchanging ending  
  늘가 - middle interrogative form of the final ending  
  of the verbal form)  
  진달래인가 (after contracting the syllabe 이 and the sound 래)

3. The low form of courtesy:

1) 냐 [nya]

This final ending is used for the verbal form of the  
noun, pronoun or numeral without any ending of the tense.

for example:

너는 누구 냐*?  
[nonun nugunyna]  
you who are?  
Who are you?

explanation:

* 누구 + 냐 (누구 - interrogative pronoun 냐 - low inter-  
  rogative form of the final ending of the verbal  
  form)

2) 느냐 [nunya]

This final ending is used for the verbal form of the  
noun, pronoun or numeral with the ending of the tense.

for example:

그것이 언제였 느냐*?  
[kugosi onjeyonnunya]  
it which time was?  
When was it?

explanation:

* 언제 + 었 + 느냐 (언제 - interrogative pronoun 었 - end-  
  ing of the past tense 느냐 - low interrogative form of
107 Table of interrogative final endings of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>the most deferential form</th>
<th>middle form of courtesy</th>
<th>low form of courtesy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 습니까 / 너니까  [sumnigga] [mnigga] | 니가 | 1) 니 [nya]  
|                           |            | 2) 는니 [nunya] |

remarks:
We have indicated here only such interrogative final endings of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral which are frequently used.
For the other interrogative final endings of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral, please refer to the appendix.

WORD ORDER

108 The interrogative final form of the verb in the sentence is the predicate, and it lies at the end of the sentence.

for example:
당신은 어디에 갓니까*?
[tangsinnun odie kamnigga] Where are you going?

explanation:
* 가 + 니는 [ka da] go
stem ending
가 + 니는 (니는 - most deferential interrogative form of the final ending of the verb)
감니가 (after contracting the syllable 가 and the sound 니)
The final form 감니가 in the sentence is the predicate.
and it lies at the end of the sentence.

109 The interrogative final form of the adjective in the sentence is the predicate, and it lies at the end of the sentence.

for example:

당신의 마음은 즐겁습니까? Is your heart merry?
[ tangsinui maumun chulgopsumnigga] Your heart merry?

explanation:

* 즐겁 + 다 [julgop da] merry.
stem ending
즐겁 + 슬니까 (슬니까—most deferential interrogative form of the final ending of the adjective)
The final form 즐겁습니까 in the sentence is the predicate, and it lies at the end of the sentence.

110 The interrogative final form of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral in the sentence is the predicate, and it lies at the end of the sentence.

for example:

그는 누구입니까? Who is he?
[ kunun nuguimnigga] he who is?

explanation:

* 누구 + 이 + 밖니까 (누구—noun 이—exchanging ending 밖니까—most deferential interrogative form of the final ending of the verbal form)
누구입니까 (after contracting the syllable 이 and the sound 밖)
The interrogative final form 누구입니까 of the verbal form of the noun 누구 in the sentence is the predicate, and it lies at the end of sentence.
The position of the interrogative pronoun in the sentence is as follows:

1. When the interrogative pronoun becomes the subject, it usually lies at the beginning of the sentence. For example:

\[ \text{nuga} \text{ omnigga} \quad \text{Who comes?} \]

Explanation:
\[ * \text{n} + \text{a} \quad (\text{가} - \text{nominative ending}) \]

2. The final form of the verbal form of the interrogative pronoun is formed by attaching the final ending of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral to the interrogative pronoun. This final form in the sentence is the predicate, and it lies at the end of the sentence. For example:

\[ \text{nonun nugunya} \quad \text{Who are you?} \]

Explanation:
\[ * \text{nugu} + \text{a} \quad (\text{nugu} - \text{interrogative pronoun} \quad \text{n} - \text{low interrogative form of the final ending of the verbal form}) \]

3. When the interrogative pronoun becomes the object, it lies between the subject and the predicate. For example:

\[ \text{tangsinun muosul hamnigga} \quad \text{What do you do?} \]

Explanation:
\[ * \text{무엇} + \text{을} \quad (\text{무엇} - \text{interrogative pronoun} \quad \text{을} - \text{accusative ending}) \]
The object  무엇을 lies between the subject 당신은 and the predicate 합니까.

4. When the interrogative pronoun is used as an attribute, it lies before the word it refers to.

for example:

그들은 몇 사람입니까*?  
[kudurun myot saramiminigga]  
they how many man are?  

How many people are they?

explanation:

* 몇 + 사람 + 이 + 합니까 ( 몇 - interrogative pronoun 사람- noun 이 - exchanging ending 합니까 - most deferential interrogative form of the final ending of the verbal form)  
몇사람입니까 (after contracting the syllable 이 and the sound 합)

112 The form of address usually lies at the beginning of the sentence.

for example:

박동무. 나는 정거장에 가오.*  
[pakdongmu nanun chong.gojang.e kao]  
comrade Pak I the station to go

Comrade Pak, I am going to the station.

explanation:

* 가. + 다  [ka da] go  
stem ending  
가 + 오 오 - middle declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

113 An interjection usually lies at the beginning of the sentence.

for example:

아*, 나의 고향이여!  
[a naui kohyang.iyo]  
ah my native place!

Ah, my native place!

explanation:

* The interjection 아 lies at the beginning of the sentence.
### LESSON 7

**THE NUMERALS**

114 The Korean language has a double series of numerals:

1. The series of pure Korean numbers

2. The series of numbers derived from hieroglyphic characters

115 The cardinal numbers:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>하나 [hana]</td>
<td>one</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>두 [tu]</td>
<td>two</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>세 [se]</td>
<td>three</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>네 [ne]</td>
<td>four</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>다섯 [tasot]</td>
<td>five</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>여섯 [yosot]</td>
<td>six</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>일곱 [ilgop]</td>
<td>seven</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>여덟 [yodol]</td>
<td>eight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>아홉 [ahop]</td>
<td>nine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>열 [yol]</td>
<td>ten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>열한 [yolhan]</td>
<td>eleven</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>열두 [yoldu]</td>
<td>twelve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>열세 [yolse]</td>
<td>thirteen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>열чет [yolnet]</td>
<td>fourteen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>번호</td>
<td>한국어</td>
<td>한국어</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>--------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>열다섯</td>
<td>열다섯</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>열여섯</td>
<td>열여섯</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>열일곱</td>
<td>열일곱</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>열여덟</td>
<td>열여덟</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>열아홉</td>
<td>열아홉</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>스물</td>
<td>스물</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>스물한나</td>
<td>스물한나</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>스물두</td>
<td>스물두</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>세련</td>
<td>세련</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>마흔</td>
<td>마흔</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>쉰</td>
<td>쉰</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>여순</td>
<td>여순</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70</td>
<td>일흔</td>
<td>일흔</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80</td>
<td>여든</td>
<td>여든</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90</td>
<td>아흔</td>
<td>아흔</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>백하나</td>
<td>백한</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101</td>
<td>백둘</td>
<td>백두</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>102</td>
<td>백삼</td>
<td>백삼</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200</td>
<td>이백</td>
<td>이백</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>300</td>
<td>삼백</td>
<td>삼백</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400</td>
<td>사백</td>
<td>사백</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>500</td>
<td>오백</td>
<td>오백</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>600</td>
<td>류백</td>
<td>류백</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>700</td>
<td>칠백</td>
<td>칠백</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>800</td>
<td>팔백</td>
<td>팔백</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>900</td>
<td>구백</td>
<td>구백</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pure Korean Numbers</td>
<td>Korean</td>
<td>Ordinal Numbers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1,000</td>
<td>천만</td>
<td>첫번쩨*1 (chotbonjae), 첫째 (chotjae)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1,001</td>
<td>천하나</td>
<td>첫일*2 (cheil)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10,000</td>
<td>만</td>
<td>첫일 (chonil)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100,000</td>
<td>십만</td>
<td>첫일 (chonil)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1,000,000</td>
<td>백만</td>
<td>첫일 (chonil)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10,000,000</td>
<td>천만</td>
<td>첫일 (chonil)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100,000,000</td>
<td>억</td>
<td>첫일 (chonil)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

It is advisable to read the numeral in the pure Korean numbers as much as possible.

For example:
19 열아홉 (yorahop) nineteen
111 백열하나 (paegyolhana) a hundred and eleven
1007 천일곱 (chonilgopa) a thousand and seven

The declension of the numeral is just the same as that of the noun (refer to 26, 27).

116 The ordinal numbers:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>첫번쩨*1 (chotbonjae), 첫째 (chotjae)</td>
<td>first</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1: 첫번쩨 (chotbonjae) and 첫째 (chotjae) are derived from the hieroglyphic characters. *2: 첫일 (cheil) is the ordinal number.
Two-digit [tubonjjae], third [chei]
doujjae [tuljjae],
third [chesam]
sebeonjjae [setjjae], fourth [chesa]
s чет [setjjae]
nebeonjjae [netjjae],
sixth [cheryuk]
netjjae [netjjae]
yeot [cheo]
dasot [yosot] [bon] jjae
fifth [chepal]
dasot [yosot] [bon] jjae
sixth [chepal]
yosot [bon] jjae
seventh [chepal]
setjjae [ilgop] [bon] jjae
ninth [chepal]
setjjae [ilgop] [bon] jjae
tenth [chepal]
setjjae [ilgop] [bon] jjae
eleventh [chepal]
yolol [bon] jjae
twelfth [chepal]
yolol [bon] jjae
thirtieth [chepal]
yosot [bon] jjae
fortieth [chepal]
yosot [bon] jjae
fiftieth [chepal]
swin [bon] jjae
sixtieth [chepal]
swin [bon] jjae
seventieth [chepal]
sorun [bon] jjae
eightieth [chepal]
sorun [bon] jjae
ninetieth [chepal]
sorun [bon] jjae
hundredth [chepal]
sorun [bon] jjae

explanation:
*1 ... [jjae] is a suffix. It means “order” and is attached to the pure Korean cardinal number in order to form the corresponding pure Korean ordinal number.

*2 [che] is a prefix. It means “order” and is put before the cardinal number in order to form the corresponding ordinal number.

165
The counting words are:

1. 개 [gae] “piece” (for objects)

   for example:

   의자  두 개  |  two chairs
   [uija  tugae]
   chair    two  pieces

2. 명 [myong] “person” (for persons)

   for example:

   대학생  두 명  |  two students
   [taehaksaeng  tumyong]
   student    two  persons

3. 분 [bun] “person” (for expressing respect)

   for example:

   선생  두 분  |  two teachers
   [sonsaeng  tubun]
   teacher    two  persons

4. 마리 [mari] “animal” (for animals)

   for example:

   소  두 마리  |  two oxen
   [so  tumari]
   ox    two  animals
5. 권 [gwon] "book", "volume" (for books)
   for example:
   사전   두권  
   [sajon   tugwon]  
   dictionary two books

6. 장 [jang] "sheet" (for papers, roofing - tiles or bricks)
   for example:
   종이   두장  
   [jong' i  tujang]  
   paper two sheets

7. 별 [bol] "suit" (for clothes)
   for example:
   옷   두별  
   [ot   tubol]  
   clothes two suits

8. 대 [dae] "piece" (for machines, cars or airplanes)
   for example:
   비행기   두대  
   [pihaeng-gi   tudae]  
   airplane two pieces

9. 척 [chok] "ship" (for ships)
   for example:
   배   세척  
   [pae   sechok]  
   ship three ships

10. 채 [chae] "house" (for houses)
    for example:
The Korean language has the incomplete noun. An incomplete noun is a noun which cannot express a complete meaning and can express it only when another word lies before it as an attribute.
for example:

○ 선생 두분* [sonsaeng tubun] teacher two persons  two teachers

explanation:
* The adjectival numeral 두 lies before the incomplete noun 분 as an attribute.

○ 우리는 반드시 승리할것이다.* [urinun pandusi sungrihalgosida] we surely win we surely win shall

explanation:
* 승리하 + 다 [sungriha da] win stem ending 승리하 + 른 + 것 + 이 + 다

[ 른 - attributive ending of the verb in its future tense (refer to 147) 것 - incomplete noun 이 - exchanging ending 다 - low declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form] 승리할것이다 (after contracting the syllable 하 and the sound 린)

○ 그가 올수 있다.* [kuga olsu itda] he come can

explanation:
* 오 + 다 [o da] come stem ending 오 + 린 + 수 있다 린 - attributive ending of the verb in its future tense 수 - incomplete noun 있다 - verb 올수 있다 [다 - low declarative form of the final ending of the verb] after contracting the syllable 오 and the sound 린]
THE SUGGESTIVE FINAL ENDINGS
OF THE VERB

There are the following suggestive final endings of the verb:

1. The most deferential form:

| 발시다 [psida] |
|---|---|

* For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>영화를 볼시다.*</th>
<th>Let us see the film!</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[yonghwarul popsida]</td>
<td>the film see let us</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Explanation:

* 보 + 다 [po da] watch
* stem ending

* 보 + 발시다 (발시다 - most deferential suggestive form of the final ending of the verb)
* 볼시다 (after contracting the syllable 보 and the sound 다)

2. The middle form of courtesy:

| 세 [se] |
|---|---|

* This final ending is used in written language.

* For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>오전에 가세.*</th>
<th>Let us go in the morning!</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[ojone kase]</td>
<td>the morning in go let us</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Explanation:

* 가 + 다 [ka da] go
* stem ending

* 가 + 세 (세 - middle suggestive form of the final ending of the verb)
3. The low form of courtesy:

for example:

- 미제를 남 the US imperialists south
  josoneso moranaeja]
  Let us drive the US imperialists out of south Korea!

explanation:
* 물아내 + 다 [moranae da] drive out
stem ending
물아내 + 자 (자 - low suggestive form of the final ending of the verb)

- 여성들의 권리를 옹호하자* ! Let us defend the women's rights.
  nyosongdurui kwollirul onghohaja]
  Let us defend the women of the right defend let us

explanation:
* 옹호하 + 다 [onghoha da] defend
stem ending
옹호하 + 자 (자 - low suggestive form of the final ending of the verb)

120 Table of suggestive final endings of the verb

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>the most deferential form</th>
<th>middle form of courtesy</th>
<th>low form of courtesy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>비시다 [psida]</td>
<td>세 [se]</td>
<td>자 [ja]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

remarks:
We have indicated here only such suggestive final endings
of the verb which are frequently used.
For the other suggestive final endings of the verb, please refer to the appendix.

THE IMPERATIVE FINAL ENDINGS OF THE VERB

121 There are the following imperative final endings of the verb:

1. The most deferential form:

십시오 [sipsio]
This final ending is used when the speaker holds the person addressed in high esteem.

for example:

빨리 오십시오.*
[bballi osipsio] quickly come!

explanation:

*오 + 다 [o da] come
stem ending
오 + 십시오 (십시오 – most deferential imperative form of the final ending of the verb)

2. The middle form of courtesy:

시오 [sio]
This final ending is used both in spoken and written Korean.

for example:

어서 않으시오.*
[oso anjusio] please sit down!

Please, sit down!
explanation:
* 앉 + 다 [an da] sit down
stem ending
앉 + 음 + 시오 (음 - link vowel 시오 - middle imperative form of the final ending of the verb)

3. The low form of courtesy:
라 [ra]

for example:
별리 오라.*
[bballi ora]
quickly come!

explanation:
* 오 + 다 [o da] come
stem ending
오 + 라 (라 - low imperative form of the final ending of the verb)

122 Table of imperative final endings of the verb

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>the most deferential form</th>
<th>middle form of courtesy</th>
<th>low form of courtesy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>십시오 [sipsio]</td>
<td>시오 [sio]</td>
<td>라 [ra]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

remarks:
We have indicated here only such imperative final endings of the verb which are frequently used.
For the other imperative final endings of the verb, please refer to the appendix.

WORD ORDER

123 The suggestive final form of the verb in the sentence
is the predicate, and it lies at the end of the sentence.

For example:

Let us drive the US imperialists out of south Korea!

Explanation:

- Let us drive out the US imperialists south Korea

The imperative final form of the verb in the sentence is the predicate, and it lies at the end of the sentence.

124 The imperative final form of the verb in the sentence is the predicate, and it lies at the end of the sentence.

For example:

Abolish nuclear weapons!

Explanation:

- Abolish nuclear weapon abolish!

The imperative final form of the verb in the sentence is the predicate, and it lies at the end of the sentence.

125 The adjectival cardinal number lies before the word
it refers to.
for example:

열 아홉 살
[yorahopsal]
nineteen age

explanation:
The adjectival cardinal number 열아홉 lies before the word 살 it refers to.

LESSON 8

THE ADVERB

126 According to their meaning or function adverbs in Korean fall into the following categories:
1. Adverbs which include words pointing out some characteristic feature of an action.
These adverbs denote the quality of an action, the manner in which an action is performed or give a quantitative characteristic of an action or a quality. These adverbs are very closely connected with the verbs which they modify.

for example:

깊이[kipi] deeply
높이[nopi] highly
넓이[nolli] widely
반가이[pan.gai] gladly
천천히[chonchoni] slowly
자주[chaju] often

협겠[himggot] with all
한가이[kaggai] near
늘[nul] always
멀리[molli] far

2. Adverbs which include words pointing out some characteristic feature of a state.
These adverbs are very closely connected with the ad-
jectives which they modify.

for example:

대단히 [taedani] very 층 [chom] a little
 아주 [aju] very 약간 [yakgan] a little
 사당히 [sangdang-i] fairly 폰 [ggae] fairly
 거의 [kou] nearly 이리 [iri] so; thus

3. Adverbs which are related to the sentence as a whole.

These adverbs are very closely connected with sentences as a whole.

These adverbs denote such modality as conviction, assumption, surmise, doubt and will.

for example:

물론 [mullon] of course 만일 [manil] if, when
 결코 [kyolko] never 비록 [pirok] although
 정말 [chongmal] indeed 도대체 [todaechae] on earth
 사실 [sasil] really 응당 [ungdang] naturally
 만약 [manyak] if, when

4. Adverbs which include words expressing both onomatopoetic and mimetic words

These adverbs are very closely connected with the verbs which they modify. Besides, they are in close relation to the nouns and are used as the attribute or predicate in sentences.

for example:

꽁 [kung] bang 꽝 [kwang] bounce
꼬기 오 [ggoggi-o] 하하 [haha] ha ha
cock-a-doodle-doo 몽게 몽게 [munggemungge] densely

5. Connecting adverbs
These adverbs connect some parts of a sentence.

for example:

받[mit] and 또한[ddohan] also
걸[kyom] and concurrently

6. Adverbs of negation

These adverbs lie mainly before verbs the meaning of which they deny.

아니[ani] / 안[an] not (negation without condition and cause)
못[mot] not (negation with condition and cause)

Adverbs have diverse lexical meaning and, besides, differ from each other in their structure. Some of them are single words whereas others are derivatives.

1. Single adverb:

for example:

잘[chal] good; often  몹소[momso] personally
매우[maeu] very

2. Derivatives:

These are formed by attaching 오[i] or 하[hi] to the root of the adjective.

1) By attaching the suffix 오[i]

for example:

깊이[kipi] deeply

explanation:

깊 + 오 [kip da] deep
root ending
깊 + 오 (오−suffix)
The adverb is formed by attaching the suffix to the root of the adjective.

2) By attaching the suffix [hi]

for example:

- [yong·gami] bravely

explanation:

- [yong·gam ha da] brave
- root suffix ending
- [hi] - suffix

The adverb is formed by attaching the suffix to the root of the adjective.

---

THE CONNECTING FORM OF THE VERB, ADJECTIVE OR VERBAL FORM OF THE NOUN, PRONOUN OR NUMERAL

The connecting form of the verb, adjective or verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral is the form, the ending of which is used as a conjunction.

The connecting form of the verb, adjective or verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral is formed by attaching the connecting ending to the stem of the verb or adjective or to the noun, pronoun or numeral. The following are the connecting endings of the verb, adjective or verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral:

1. The coordinative connecting endings:

The coordinative connecting endings connect grammatically equivalent units.
The coordinative connecting endings are divided into three kinds:

1) The copulative connecting endings:

The copulative connecting endings connect equal units.

(1) 고[go]

This connecting ending is used in order to express the simple linking and the linking of chronological order.

For example:

○ 먹 고*1 입는*2 문제 the question of food
[mog-go imnun munje] and clothes
eating and dressing question

explanation:

*1 먹 + 다 [mok da] eat
    stem ending
*2 입 + 다 [ip da] dress
    stem ending

○ 조선 사람은 출기를고*1 The Koreans are a
[chosonsaramun sulgiropgo] wise and brave nation.
the Korean wise and
yong gamhan minjogida] brave nation is

explanation:

*1 출기를 + 다 [sulgirop da] wise
    stem ending
*2 용감하 + 다 [yong gamha da] brave
    stem ending
울감한 (after contracting the syllable 하 and the sound ㄴ)

〇 맑고 푸른 하늘 | the clear, blue sky
[malgo purun hanul]
clear and blue sky

explanation:

*₁ 맑 + 다 [mak da] clear
stem ending
맑 + 고 (고—copulative connecting ending)

*₂ 푸른 + 다 [puru da] blue
stem ending
푸른 + 냥 (냥—attributive ending of the adjective in its present tense)
푸른 (after contracting the syllable 륳 and the sound ㄴ)

〇 비료는 쌀이 고* | The fertilizer is
[piryonun ssarigo
the fertilizer rice is and
쌀은 곧 공산주의다.
ssarun kot kongsanju-uiida]
rice namely communism is

explanation:

*쌀 + 이 + 고 (쌀—noun 이—exchanging ending 고—copulative
connecting ending)

(2) 며[myo], 면서[myonso]

These connecting endings are used in order to express a simple link.

for example:

〇 소년 단원들이 | Children's Union members
[sonyon danwonduri
Children's Union members
노래를 부르며*
noraerul purumyo
a song sing and

Children's Union members march on the street, singing a song.
거리를 행진 합니다.
korisul haengjinhanda
street march

explanation:
* 부르 + 다 [puru da] sing
stem ending
부르 + 며 (며 - copulative connecting ending)

○ 그는 시인이며 작곡가이다.
[kunun si inimyo chakgokgaida] he a poet and composer is
explanation:
* 시인 + 이 + 며(시인 - noun 이 - exchanging ending
며 - copulative connecting ending)

○ 로동자이면서 *
[rodongjaemyonso a worker is and
공정 대학생인 kongjangdaehaksaeng in concurrently a university-
김동무 kimdongmu] college student being
Komrade Kim, a worker and concurrently a student at a university-
level factory college

explanation:
* 로동자 + 이 +면서 (로동자 - noun 이 - exchanging ending
면서 - copulative connecting ending)

131 2) The adversative connecting endings:
The adversative connecting endings are used to connect two adversative units.

(1) 지만[jiman]
for example:
우리는 전쟁을 바라지 
[urinun chonjaeng ul paraji we the war want]
We don’t want the war, but
we the war want never fear it.
 Anchimann kyolko chonjaeng,ul
not but surely the war
두려워하지 않는다.*
turyowohaji annunda]fear not

explanation:
*1 바라+ 다 [para da] want
stem ending
바라+지 않다 [지-connecting ending of negation(refer to verb)
139) 없다-verb]
바라+지 않+지만(지만-adversative connecting ending)
*2 두려워하+ 다 [turyowo ha da] fear
stem ending
두려워하+지 않다 (지-connecting ending of negation
없다-verb)
두려워하+지 않+는다 (는다-low declarative form of the
final ending of the verb)

(2) 데[nde]
데 denotes the present tense.
This connecting ending is used in the verbal form of
the noun, pronoun or numeral without ending of the
tense and in the adjective without ending of the tense.

for example
그는 로동자인데*
[kunun rodongjainde
he a worker is*but
공 장
kongjang
a university-level factory
대 학생이다.
daehawksaengida]college student is

explanation:
* 로동자+이+데(로동자-noun 이-exchanging ending 데
He is a worker, but
a student at a uni-
versity-level factory
college.
3) The disjunctive connecting ending:

(1) 니[na], 드[dun]
These connecting endings are used in pairs, but they can also be used alone.

for example:

눈이 오나* 비가 오나*
[nuni ona piga ona
snow comes or rain comes or
 언제나 초소를 지키는 우리
onjena chosorul chkinun uri
always the post defending our
인민군 군인들
inmin-gun gunindul]
People's Army soldiers

explanation:

* 오 + 냐 [o da] come
stem ending
오 + 니[나] (나-disjunctive connecting ending)
드[dun] can be used instead of 니[na].

for example:

눈이 오든 비가 오든
[nuni odun piga odun
snow comes or rain comes or
whether it snows or
rains
(2) 드지[dunji]
This connecting ending is used in pairs, but it can also be used alone.

for example:
네가 가든지** 네가
[naega kadunji nega
I go or you
garunji 하여야 한다.*
kadunji hayoya handa] go or must

I or you must go.

explanation:
*1 가 + 다 [ka da] go
stem ending
가 + 든지(든지-disjunctive connecting ending)
*2 하 + 다 [ha da] do
stem ending
하 +여야 하다[여야-connecting ending of condition(refer
to 134) 하다-verb]
하 +여야 하 +려다(려다-low declarative form of the final
ending of the verb)
하여야 한다-(after contracting the syllable 하 and the
sound 라)

133 2. The subordinate connecting endings:
The subordinate connecting endings are divided as
follows:

134 1) The connecting endings of condition:
These endings connect subordinate and principal
parts, the former of which expresses the condition
for the latter.

(1) 면[myon]
for example:
래일 날씨가 좋으면**
[raeil nalssiga choumyon
tomorrow the weather good when
우리는 출발 하겠 다.*
urinun chulbalhagetda]
we start shall

When the weather is
tomorrow, we
shall start.
explanation:

*₁ 쟊 + 다 [chota] good
   stem ending
   쟉 + 오 + 면 (오 - link vowel 면 - connecting ending of condition)

*₂ 출발하다 + 다 [chulbalha da] start
   stem ending
   출발하 + 셋 + 다 (셋 - ending of the future tense 다 - low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

(2) 어야[aya] / 여야[oya] / 여야[yoya]

These endings express indispensable condition.

어야[aya] is used when the stem of the verb, adjective or verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral has the vowel [a], [ya] or [o] in its last syllable.

for example:

나가 + 다 [naga da] go out
   stem ending
   나가 + 여야 (여야 - connecting ending of condition)
   나가여야 (after contracting the syllables 가 [ga] and 아 [a])

여야[oya] is used when the stem of the verb, adjective or verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral has the vowel [o], [yo], [u], [u] or [i] in its last syllable.

for example:

먹 + 다 [mok da] eat
   stem ending
   먹 + 여야 (여야 - connecting ending of condition)

여야[yoya] is used when the stem of the verb, adjective or verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral ends in the vowel [i], [ae], [e], [oe], [wi], [ui] or the syllable 하 [ha] in its last syllable.

for example:

공부하다 + 다 [kongbuha da] study
   stem ending

185
The connecting endings of cause:

The connecting endings of cause connect the subordinate and principal parts, the former of which expresses the cause for the latter.

(1) นло [muro]

For example:

Because it rains, I take my umbrella.

Explanation:

* นло + ดา [o da] come

(2) นิ [ni], นิต [nigga]

These connecting endings mainly express the reason.
Look after your health because it is very cold!

 explanation:

* 출 + 다 [chup da] cold
stem ending
추 + 우 + 니 [(니 - connecting ending of cause) after exchanging the sound 니 for the syllable 우 (refer to 196)]

나가 [nigga] can be used instead of 니 [ni].

for example:

추우니가 [chu·unigga] cold because

 explanation:

출 + 다 [chup da] cold
stem ending
추 + 우 + 니가 [(나가 - connecting ending of cause) after exchanging the sound 니 for the syllable 우 (refer to 196)]

(3) 데니 [doni-]
This connecting ending expresses the reason or cause.

for example:

그는 열심히 공부하다 데니
[kunun yolsimi kongbuhadonir refer to 196] As he studied
diligently, he succeeded.

성공하였다 데니
song 'gonghayotda] succeeded

187
3) The connecting endings of order:
These endings are used to express that some acts occur in order.

(1) 다[da], 다가[daga]
These connecting endings are mainly used with the verb.
They express that an action is discontinued and followed by another action.

**example:**

가는 책을 읽는다.
[kunun chaegul he the book]

*b* 놓다
poda
to read stopping
나갔다.
{nagat-da} went out

*explanation:*

* 놓 + 다 [po da] read
stem ending

* 다가 [daga] can be used instead of 다[da].

**example:**

보다가 [podaga] to read stopping

He stopped reading the book and went out.
This connecting ending is mainly used with the verb. It expresses that an action is followed by another action.

For example:

비가 오 자*₁
[piga oja]
the rain came immediately
어두워졌다*₂
oduwojotda]
dark got

Explanation:

*₁ 오 + 다 [oda] come
stem ending
오 + 자(자—connecting ending of order)

*₂ 어두 + 다 [odup da] dark
stem ending
어두 + 우 + 어 + 지다[(어—connecting ending of method or means 지다—verb which is used as an auxiliary) after exchanging the sound 우 for the syllable 우 (refer to 196)]
어두 + 위 + 지 + 다[(지—stem 다—ending) after contracting the syllables 지 and 여]
어두위였다(ending of the past tense 다—low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)
어두위쳤다(after contracting the syllables 지 and 었)

4) The connecting endings of method or means

아[a] / 어[o] / 여[yo]
아[a] is used when the stem of the verb, adjective or verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral has the vow-
el [a], [ya] or [o] in its last syllable.

어[[o]] is used when the stem of the verb, adjective or verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral has the vowel [o], [yo], [u], [i] or [e] in its last syllable.

어[yo] is used when the stem of the verb, adjective or verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral ends in the vowel [i], [ae], [e], [oe], [wi], [ui] or the syllable [ha] in its last syllable.

for example:

○ 해가 속아 오른다*₁ The sun rises.
the sun going up rises

explanation:

*₁ 속 + 다 [sot da] go up
stem ending
속 + 아 (아—connecting ending of method or means)

*₂ 오르 + 다 [oru da] rise
stem ending
오르 + 냉다(냉다—low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)
오른 다(after contracting the syllable ㄹ and the sound [l])

○ 반제련 대성
[panjeryondaessong]
anti-imperialist solidarity
평화와 친선을 위하여
pyonghwawa chinsonul wihayo]
peace and friendship for

explanation:

* 위하 + 다 [wiha da] serve
stem ending
위하 + 여(여—connecting ending of method or means)

138 5) The connecting endings of purpose or intention
These endings express intention.

for example:

하자고* 결심하면
[hajago kyolsimhamyon
to do determines if
못 해 며
motaenael
not able to finish
일이 없다.
iri opda]
work there is not

explanation:
* 하 + 다 [ha da] do
stem ending
하 + 자고(자고−connecting ending of aim or intention)

(2) 러(ro)
This ending expresses purpose.

for example:

나는 공부하러*
[nanun kongbuharo
I in order to study
학교에 갔다.
hakgyoe kanda]
school to go

explanation:
* 공부하 + 다 [kongbuha da] study
stem ending
공부하+러(러−connecting ending of purpose or intention)

If man is determined, there is nothing which cannot be finished.

I go to school in order to study.

139 6) The connecting ending of negation

지[ji]

191
This ending is connected to "not" and "cannot" and is attached to the stem of the verb or adjective. It expresses an action or situation which is denied. The word with "not" becomes a part of the sentence together with "not", "cannot", or "not".

For example:

```
푸른 하늘을 더럽히지 말라!  Don't pollute the blue sky!
```

**Explanation:**

*더럽히지 말다* [toropi da] pollute

stem ending

더럽히지 말다 (지-connecting ending of negation

말다-verb which is used as an auxiliary)

더럽히지 말 + 다

stem ending

더럽히지 말 + 라 (라-low imperative form of the final ending of the verb)

---

140 Table of connecting endings of the verb, adjective or verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>classification</th>
<th>connecting ending</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>coordinative</td>
<td>(1) 고[go]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(2) 며[myo], 면서[myonso]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>copulative</td>
<td>(1) 지만[jiman]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(2) 둘[nde]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adversative</td>
<td>(1) 나[na], 둘[dun]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(2) 둘지[dunji]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disjunctive</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

192
remarks:

We have indicated here only such connecting endings of the verb, adjective or verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral which are often used.

For the other connecting endings of the verb, adjective or verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral, please refer to the appendix.
The connecting form of the verb, adjective or verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral comes before the unit to be connected.

for example:
조선 사람은 술기름고* | The Koreans are a
[chosonsaramun sulgiropgo wise and
the Korean
勇気한 민족이다. courageous nation is
yonggamhan minjogida]

explanation:
* The connecting form 술기름고 of the adjective 술기름다 lies before the unit 용감한 to be connected.

The position of the adverb
1. The adverb can be an adverbial modifier.
1) The adverb can be a modifier to the part of sentence expressed by the verb.
(1) The adverb can be a modifier to the predicate expressed by the final form of the verb.
The adverb is an adverbial modifier and comes before the final form of the verb, the final predicate.

for example:
그는 빨리*1 달린다*2. | He runs quickly.
[kunun bballi tallinda] runs
he quickly

explanation:
*1, The adverb 빨리 lies before the final form 달린다 of
the verb 달리다, the final predicate.

*₂ 달리 + 다 [talli da] run
stem ending
달리 + 니다 (ㄴ다 - low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)
달린다 (after contracting the syllable 림 and the sound 림)

(2) The adverb can be a modifier to the predicate expressed by the connecting form of the verb.
The adverb is an adverbial modifier and comes before the connecting form of the verb, the connecting predicate.

for example:

그 가 안 오고 내 가 온다 | He doesn't come
[kuga anogo naega onda] and I come
he not comes and I come

explanation:

*₁ The adverb 안 lies before the connecting form 오고 of the verb 오다, the connecting predicate.

*₂ 오 + 다 [o da] come
stem ending
오 + 고 (고 - copulative connecting ending of the verb)

(3) The adverb can be a modifier to the attribute expressed by the attributive form of the verb.
The adverb is an adverbial modifier and comes before the attributive form of the verb (refer to 147), the attribute.

for example:

잘 자는 *₁ 아 이 | a good sleeping child
[chal chanun ai] good sleeping child

explanation:

*₁ The adverb 잘 comes before the attributive form 자는
of the verb 자다, the attribute.

*2 자 + 다 [cha da] sleep
stem ending
자 + 는 [는—attribute ending of the verb in its present tense (refer to 147)]

2) The adverb can be a modifier to the part of sentence expressed by the adjective
(1) The adverb can be a modifier to the predicate expressed by the final form of the adjective.
The adverb is an adverbial modifier and lies before the final form of the adjective, the final predicate.

for example:

이 방은 아주*1 큼니다.*2 This room is very
[i pang.un aju kumnida] large.
this room very large

explanation:
*1 The adverb 아주 comes before the final form 큼니다 of the adjective 크다, the final predicate.
*2 크 + 다 [ku da] large
stem ending
크 + 빛니다 (빛니다—most deferential declarative form of the final ending of the adjective)
 큼니다 (after contracting the syllable 크 and the sound 빛)

(2) The adverb can be a modifier to the predicate expressed by the connecting form of the adjective.
The adverb is an adverbial modifier and comes before the connecting form of the adjective, the connecting predicate.

for example:

이 방은 아주*1 크고*2 밝다 This room is
[i pang.un aju kugo pakda] very large and
this room very large and bright bright.
explanation:

*₁ The adverb 아주 lies before the connecting form 크고 of the adjective 크다, the connecting predicate.

*₂ 크 + 다 [ku da] large
stem ending
크 + 고 (고—copulative connecting ending of the adjective)

(3) The adverb can be a modifier to the attribute expressed by the attributive form of the adjective. The adverb is an adverbial modifier and comes before the attributive form of the adjective (refer to 149), the attribute.

for example:

아 주² 큰² 방
[aju kun pang]
very large room

explanation:

*₁ The adverb 아주 lies before the attributive form 큰 of the adjective 크다, the attribute.

*₂ 크 + 다 [ku da] large
stem ending
크 + 란 (란—attributive ending of the adjective in its present tense (refer to 149))
큰 (after contracting the syllable 크 and the sound 란)

3) The adverb can be a modifier to the part of sentence expressed by the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral.

(1) The adverb can be a modifier to the predicate expressed by the final form of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral.

The adverb is an adverbial modifier and comes before the final form of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral.
numeral, the final predicate.

For example:

벌써 * 가울이지 만 *2.
[polsso kaurijiman]
already autumn is

It is already autumn.

Explanations:

*1 The adverb 벌써 lies before the final form 가울이지만 of the verbal form of the noun 가울, the final predicate.

*2 가울 + 이 + 지만 (가울 – noun 이 – exchanging ending 지만 – low declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form)

(2) The adverb can be a modifier to the predicate expressed by the connecting form of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral.

The adverb is an adverbial modifier and comes before the connecting form of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral, the connecting predicate.

For example:

벌써* 가울이지 만*2
[polsso kaurijimmel]
already autumn is but
날씨는 따뜻하다.
[nausjinun ddaddutada]
the weather warm

It is already autumn, but the weather is warm.

Explanations:

*1 The adverb 벌써 lies before the connecting form 가울이지 만 of the verbal form of the noun 가울, the connecting predicate.

*2 가울 + 이 + 지만 (가울 – noun 이 – exchanging ending 지만 – adverbative connecting ending of the verbal form)

(3) The adverb can be a modifier to the attribute expressed by the attributive form of the verbal form
of the noun, pronoun or numeral.

The adverb is an adverbial modifier and comes before the attributive form of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral (refer to 154), the attribute.

for example:

벌써*₁ 대학생인*₂
[polsso taehaksaeng.in
already student being
김동무
kimdongmu]
Kim comrade

explanation:

*₁ The adverb 벌써 comes before the attributive form 대학생인 of the verbal form of the noun 대학생, the attribute.

*₂ 대학생 + 이 + 란 (대학생 - noun 이 - exchanging ending 란 - attributive ending of the verbal form in its present tense)
대학생인 (after contracting the syllable 이 and the sound 란)

4) The adverb can be a modifier to another modifier expressed by an adverb or adverbial form.

The adverb is an adverbial modifier and comes before another adverb or adverbial form, the adverbial modifier.

for example:

 좀*₁ 천천히 걸어라*₂!
[chom chonchoni korora]
[a little slowly walk!]

explanation:

*₁ The adverb 좀 comes before another adverb 천천히, the adverbial modifier.

*₂ 걸 + 다 walk
걸 + 어라 [(어라 - low imperative form of the final ending of

199
the verb) after exchanging the sound = for the sound =
(refer to 196)

2. The adverb can be an attribute.

The adverb may lie before the word which it modifies.
for example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>wording</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kung sori</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bang crack</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

explanation:
* The adverb 쿤 comes before the word 소리 it refers to.

3. The adverb can be a predicate.

The adverb comes at the end of the sentence.
for example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>wording</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>닭들은 꼬끼오</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[takdurun ggoggio]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hens cock-a-doodle-doo</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

explanation:
* The adverb 꼬끼오 comes at the end of the sentence.

4. The connecting adverb connects similar units.

for example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>wording</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>정책, 경제 및 문화</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[chongchi kyongje mit munhwa]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>policy, economy and culture</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

explanation:
* The connecting adverb 및 connects 정책 and 문화 and comes between them.

LESSON 9

THE PRE-NOUN

143 The pre-noun is a part of speech which defines the character of the object and is not used as a predicate, but only as an attribute.

for example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>wording</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>온 사회 [on sahoe] whole society</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

pre-noun noun
144 The pre-nouns are divided into two kinds:

1. The pre-noun which expresses the quantity of the object
   for example:
   - 매 사람 [mae saram] each man
     pre-noun noun
   - 약 3배 [yak sambae] about three times
     pre-noun noun

2. The pre-noun which expresses a property of the object
   for example:
   - 사회주의의 공산주의의 [sahoeju-ui kongsanju-uiui]
     socialism of communism of
     new era
     explanation:
     * 새 기원
     pre-noun noun
   - 또 사람 [ddan saram] another person
     pre-noun noun

145 The pre-noun has no ending and is only used as an attribute.
   for example:
   - 온 나라 [on nara] whole country
     pre-noun noun
     explanation:
     The pre-noun 온 comes before the noun 나라 as an attribute.
THE INTERJECTION

146 The interjection denotes the emotion and attitude of the speaker.

There are the following interjections:
1. Interjections which express emotions such as joy, sorrow and wonder:

   for example:
   1) joy: 만세! [manse] hurrah!
   2) sorrow: 오! [o] oh!, 아이고! [aigo] woe!
   3) wonder: 아! [a] ah!, 오! [o] oh!
2. Interjections which express the demand or will of the speaker.

   for example:
   ○ 자[cha] now
   ○ 어서[oso] please
3. Interjections which express the attitude of the person addressed.

   for example:
   ○ 응[ung] yes (to a person of the same rank or to an inferior)
   ○ 예[ye] yes (to a superior)

THE ATTRIBUTIVE FORM OF THE VERB

147 The attributive form of the verb is formed by attaching one of the following attributive endings of the verb to the stem of the verb:
1. The attributive ending which expresses the present tense of the verb


This ending is an attributive ending which expresses the fact that an action occurs simultaneously with another action or at the time when the person is speaking. For example:

\[
\text{fighting people}
\]

explanation:

\[\text{fight} + \text{attributive ending of the verb in its present tense}\]

2. The attributive ending which expresses the past tense of the verb


This attributive ending is the attributive ending which expresses the fact that an action occurs before another action or before the time when the person is speaking. For example:

\[
\text{established in our country}
\]

explanation:

\[\text{establish} + \text{connecting ending of method or means} + \text{verb which is used as an auxiliary} + \text{after contracting the syllables and }}

\text{and}
세위 + 지 + 띠 ( Legislative ending of the verb in its past tense)
세위진 (after contracting the syllable 지 and the sound 띠)

〇 이 책은 내가
  [이 책은 내가
   이 책은 내가]
  this book I
어제 읽은 책이다.
  [어제 읽은 책이다.
   어제 읽은 책이다]
  yesterday read book is

explanation:
  * 읽 + 다 [ik da] read
    stem ending
    읽 + 읽 + 띠 ( Legislative ending of the verb in its past tense)

3. The attributive ending which expresses the past continuous tense of the verb

for example:

이 책은 내가
  [이 책은 내가
   이 책은 내가]
  this book I
어제 읽던 책이다.
  [어제 읽던 책이다.
   어제 읽던 책이다]
  yesterday having been read book is

explanation:
  * 읽 + 다 [ik da] read
    stem ending
    읽 + 합 (합 - attributive ending of the verb in its past continuous tense)

4. The attributive ending which expresses the future tense of the verb

并不代表

This book is the book which I read yesterday.
for example:

어린이들은 앞날의
[orinidurun amnarui
the children the future of
조국을
chogugul
the fatherland
며메고나갈*
ddomegonagal
to shoulder and go forward
우리 혁명의 믿을직한
uri hyongmyong·ui midumjikan
our revolution of reliable
후계자들이다.
hugyejadurida]
successors are

explanation:
* 며에 + 다 [ddome da] shoulder
stem ending

며에 + 고 + 나가다 (고—copulative connecting ending
나가다—verb which is used as an auxiliary)

며에 + 고 + 나가 + 다
stem ending

며에 + 고 + 나가 + 근 (근—attributive ending of the verb in its
future tense)

며에고 나갈 (after contracting the syllable 가 and the sound 근)

이 책은 내가
[i chaegun naega
this book I

레일 읽을* 책이다.
raeil ilgul chaegida]
tomorrow to be read book is

explanation:
* 읽 + 다 [ik da] read
stem ending

읽 + 오 + 근 (근—link-vowel

This book is the book which I shall read tomorrow.
The attributive ending of the verb in its future tense

Table of the attributive endings of the verb

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>attributive ending of the verb</th>
<th>tense</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>는 [nun]</td>
<td>present</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>＼ [n]</td>
<td>past</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>면 [don]</td>
<td>past continuous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이 [l]</td>
<td>future</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The attributive form of the adjective is formed by attaching one of the following attributive endings of the adjective to the stem of the adjective:

1. The attributive ending which expresses the present tense of the adjective
   ＼ [n]
   for example:
   오늘 우리 사회주의 조국은
   [onul uri sahoeju-ui jogugun
today our socialist fatherland
조선인민의 행복한
chosoninminui haengbokan
Korean people of happy
   Our socialist fatherland is today the happy cradle of the Korean people.
The attributive ending which expresses the past continuous tense of the adjective

For example:

어둡던 [odup don] dark
having been dark sky clearly

The sky which was dark brightens up.

2. The attributive ending which expresses the future tense of the adjective

3. The attributive ending which expresses the future tense

of the adjective
for example:

This is a tree that will grow big.

explanation:

* 크 + 다 [ku da] big

stem ending

크 + 끌 (끌-attributive ending of the adjective in its future tense)

 Souls (after contracting the syllable 크 and the sound 끌)

150 Table of the attributive endings of the adjective

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>attributive ending of the adjective</th>
<th>tense</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>끔[nn]</td>
<td>present</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>던[don]</td>
<td>past continuous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>끔[1]</td>
<td>future</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

THE ATTRIBUTIVE FORM OF THE VERBAL FORM OF THE NOUN, PRONOUN OR NUMERAL

151 The attributive form of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral is the form which is used as an attribute.

The attributive form of the verbal form of the noun,
pronoun or numeral is formed by attaching one of the following attributive endings of the verbal form to the noun, pronoun or numeral by means of the exchanging ending $o$:

1. The attributive ending which expresses the present tense of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral

\[ L[n] \]

for example:

주 체 의 조 국 인*  
[chucheui chogugin  
Juche of the fatherland being  
조 선  
choson]  
Korea

explanation:

*조국 +이+$L(조국-noun 이-exchanging ending

$L$-attributive ending of the verbal form in its present tense)

조국인 (after contracting the syllable 이 and the sound $L$)

2. The attributive ending which expresses the past continuous tense of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral

\[don\]

for example:

지난 날에 조선인민군  
[chinannare chosoninmingun  
the past in Korean People's Army  
군인이던*  
guninidon]  
soldier having been

explanation:

Comrade Kim who was a soldier of the Korean People's Army
3. The attributive ending which expresses the future tense of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>attributive ending of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral</th>
<th>tense</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>데[don]</td>
<td>past continuous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>에[1]</td>
<td>future</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

for example:

나라의 주인공 들 일* the new generation who will be heroes of the country

새 세대

new generation

explanation:

*주인공 + 들 + 이 + 데(주인공 - noun 들 - plural ending 이 - exchanging ending 데-attributive ending of the verbal form in its future tense)

주인공들일(after contracting the syllable 이] and the sound 데)

152 Table of the attributive endings of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral
THE FORM OF THE ADVERBIAL MODIFIER OF THE VERB OR ADJECTIVE

153 This form is a form which is used as an adverbial modifier.

This is formed by attaching one of the following endings of the adverbial modifier to the stem of the verb or adjective:

1. The endings of the adverbial modifier of the verb or adjective

   
   1.1 [개 ge], [도록 dorok]

   These endings of the adverbial modifier express the manner or circumstance in which some action or situation occurs.

   for example:

   o 아름답게 " 꽃은 *2
     [arumdapge pinun
     beautifully blooming
     목란 꽃
     mongranggot] magnolia blossom

   explanation:

   *1 아름답 ] + 다 [arumdap da] beautiful
     stem ending
     아름답 + 계 (계-ending of the adverbial modifier of the verb or adjective)

   *2 꽃 + 다 [pi da] bloom
     stem ending
     꽃+는 (는-attributive ending of the verb in its present tense)

   o 밤이 깊도록*
     [pami kipdorok]
     night deep till

   beautifully blooming magnolia blossom

211
2. The endings of the adverbial modifier of the verb or adjective

듯[dut], 듯이[dusi]

These endings are used to express comparison in actions or situations.

for example:

그가, 말하듯이* as he says
[kuga malhadusi]
he says as

explanation:

* 말하 + 다 [malha da] say
stem ending
말하+듯이(듯이-ending of the adverbial modifier of the verb or adjective)

3. The ending of the adverbial modifier of the verb or adjective

근수록[lsurok]

This ending expresses intensification in comparison.

for example:

붉은 수록* 아름다운 The redder, the more beautiful
[pulgulsurok arumdaun]
red the more beautiful
조선의 진달래
chosonui chindallae]
Korean azalea

explanation:

* 붉 + 다 [puk da]. red
stem ending
붉 + 오 + 근수록(오-link-vowel 근수록-ending of the adverbial modifier of the verb or adjective)
Table of the endings of the adverbial modifier of the verb or adjective

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ending of the adverbial modifier of the verb or adjective</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. 게[ge], 도록[dorok]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. 뜨[dut], 뜨이[dusi]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. 둘수록[lusurok]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**WORD ORDER**

155 The attributive form of the verb comes before the word it refers to.

**Example:**

싸우는* 인민
[ssaunun inmin]  
fighting people

**Explanation:**

* 싸우 + 다 [ssa da] fight  
stem ending  
싸우 + 는 (는-attributive ending of the verb in its present tense)  
The attributive form 싸우는 of the verb 싸우다 lies before the word 인민 it refers to.

156 The attributive form of the adjective comes before the word it refers to.

**Example:**

붉은* 꽃
[pulgun ggot]  
red flower
* 붉 + 다 [puk da] red
stem ending
 붉 + 오 + 럼 (으 - link - vowel  럼 - attributive ending of the adjective in its present tense)
 붉은 (after contracting the syllable 우 and the sound 럼)
The attributive form 붉은 of the adjective 붉다 lies before the word it refers to.

157 The attributive form of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral comes before the word it refers to.

for example:

로 동 자 발명가인* Comrade Kim, an inventor and worker
[rodongja palmyong - gain worker inventor being
김 동 무 kimdongmu] Kim comrade

explanation:
* 발명가 + 이 + 럼 (이 - exchanging ending  럼 - attributive ending of the verbal form in its present tense)
발명가인 (after contracting the syllable 이 and the sound 럼)
The attributive form 발명가인 of the verbal form of the noun 발명가 lies before the word 김동무 it refers to.

158 The form of the adverbial modifier of the verb or adjective comes before the word it modifies.

for example:

아름답게* 피는 진달래 beautiful blooming azalea
[arumdapge pinun chindallae] azalea
beautifully blooming azalea

explanation:
* 아름답 + 다 [arumdap da] beautiful
stem ending
아름답 + 개(개 - ending of the adverbial modifier of the
The form of the adverbial modifier 이 름 달게 of the adjective 아름답다 lies before the word it refers to.

159 The pre-noun comes before the word it refers to.

For example:

- 셰* 집
  [sae chip]
  new house

  Explanation:
  * The pre-noun 셰 comes before the word 집 it refers to.

- 단* 줄
  [tan dul]
  only two

  Explanation:
  * The pre-noun 단 comes before the word 줄 it refers to.

160 The interjection depends on no word and mostly comes at the beginning of the sentence.

For example:

- 오* 평양!
  [o pyongyang
  oh Pyongyang!

  평양은
  pyongyang-un
  Pyongyang

  나의 심장.
  naui simjang
  my heart

  Explanation:
  * The interjection 오 comes at the beginning of the sentence.
LESSON 10

THE TENSES

161 The tenses in Korean are expressed by the tense ending.

162 The tenses expressed by the tense endings are called the absolute tenses.

The absolute tenses are the present, past and future.

1. The present
The present expresses an action or situation which occurs at the time when the person is speaking.
The present is expressed by the zero tense ending, namely without any tense ending.

For example:

열차는 달린다.

The train runs.

explanation:

* 달리 + 다 [talli da] run
stem ending

달리 + 냄다 (lander - low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

달린다 (after contracting the syllable 리 and the sound 냄)

There is no tense ending in the final form 달린다 of the verb 달리다.

2. The past
The past expresses an action or situation which occurred before the time when the person is speaking.
The past is expressed by the ending of the past tense 았[at] / 었[ot] / 었[yot].

었[at] is attached to the stem of a word which is to express the past when the stem of the word has the
vowel ㅏ[a], ㅑ[ya] or ㅗ[o] in its last syllable.

ㅐ[ot] is attached to the stem of the word which is to express the past when the stem of the word has the vowel ㅏ[o], ㅑ[yo], ㅗ[u], ㅡ[u] or ㅣ[и] in its last syllable.

ㅐ[yot] is attached to the stem of the word which is to express the past when the stem of the word ends in the vowel ㅏ[i], ㅑ[ae], ㅗ[e], ㅗ[oe], ㅜ[wi], ㅡ[ui] or the syllable ㅐ[ха] in its last syllable.

ㅐ[at], ㅐ[ot] and ㅐ[yot] come before the ending of the word which is to express the past.

for example:
두 유격대원이*2
[tu yugyokdaewoni
two partisans

농막집을 찾아왔다*1
nongmakjibul chajawatda]
the peasant’s cottage visited

explanation:

*1 찾아오 + 다 [chajao da] visit
stem ending

 찾아오+와+다 (ㅐ-ending of the past tense 다-low declarative
form of the final ending of the verb)

찾아왔다 (after contracting the syllables 오 and 야)
The ending of the past tense 야 is attached to the stem 오
of the verb 오다.

*2 두 유격대원 + 이
numeral noun nominative ending

Although the plural ending 들 is not attached to 유격대원,
the meaning of the plural of 유격대원 is expressed by
the numeral 두 which lies before 유격대원.

3. The future expresses the action or situation which will occur after the person speaks.

The future is expressed by the ending of the future tense 젓[set].
getti] is attached to the stem of the word which is to express the future.

for example:

우리는 레일 영국으로  We shall leave for
[urinun raeil yong-guguro England tomorrow.
We tomorrow England for

예약 습니다. leave shall

explanation:
* 메나 + 다 [ddona da] start
stem ending
메나 + 셔 + 습니다 (اعتم-ending of the future tense 습니다-
most deferential declarative form of the final ending
of the verb)
The ending of the future tense 셔 is attached to the
stem 메나 of the verb 메나다.

163 The tenses are also expressed by attributive endings.
These tenses are called the relative tenses.

for example:

O 그는 열린 문을  He shut the opened
[kunun yollin munul door.
he the opened door

닫았다 *2.

tadatda] shut

explanation:
*1 열리 + 다 [yolli da] be opened
stem ending
열리 + [ ENUM-ending of the voice (refer to 176) [ ENUM-
attributive ending of the verb in its past tense ]
열린 (after contracting the syllable 리 and the sound lastName)

*2 닫 + 다 [tat da] shut
stem ending
The attributive ending 러 of the verb is the past. And this is anterior to the past 담았다.

He worked out the plan which will be carried out next month.

explanation:

*1 수행하 + 다 [suhaengha da] carry out

stem ending

수행하 + 근 (근 -attributive ending of the verb in its future tense)

수행할 (after contracting the syllable 하 and the sound 근)

*2 세우 + 다 [seu da] work out

stem ending

세우 + 였 + 다 (였-ending of the past tense)

세웠다 (after contracting the syllables 였 and 였)

The attributive ending 러 of the verb is the future. And this future is the future in the past 세웠다.

We can exactly express complicated relations of time by using tense endings.

1. In order to express the fact that one thing happened in the past and earlier than another thing, the combined form of two endings which express the past is used. Such a combination is made from among the past endings作った, 였[ot] and 였[yot].

for example:
As the house owner had met those partisans before, he received them gladly.

Explanation:

*1 만나 + 다 [manna da] meet
stem ending
만나+았 + 였 + 은 + 모르(았-ending of the past tense
았-ending of the past tense 은-link-vowel 모르-connecting ending of cause)
만났으므로 (after contracting the syllables 나 and 았)

*2 반갑 + 다 [pangap da] glad
stem ending
반갑 + 계 (계-ending of the adverbial modifier of the
verb or adjective)

*3 맞이 + 하 + 다 [majiha da] receive
stem ending
맞이 + 하 + 였 + 다 (없-ending of the past tense 하-low
declarative form of the final ending of the verb)
맞이했다 (after contracting the syllables 하 and 았)

2. 있[at], 였[ot] and 옛[yot] are linked with 이[1] or 겪[get]
to express the surmise of a fact in the past.

For example:

○ 그는 평양에 [kunun pyongyang-e he
도착하였겠 다*.
tochakayotget da]
may have arrived

He may have arrived at Pyongyang.
explanation:

* 도착하 + 다 [tochaka da] arrive
  stem ending
  도착하 + 옛 + 소 + 다 (요-ending of the past tense
  졸-ending of the future tense 다-low declarative form
  of the final ending of the verb)

The ending of the past tense 요 and the ending of the
future tense 졸 are linked to express the surmise of a fact
in the past.

〇 그는 평양에
[kunun pyongyang-e
he Pyongyang to
도착하였을것이다*.
tochakayossulgosida]
may have arrived

explanation:

* 도착하 + 다 [tochaka da] arrive
  stem ending
  도착하 + 옛 + 오 + 귀 (요-ending of the past tense
  오-link-vowel 귀-attributive ending of the verb in
  its future tense)
  도착하였을 (after contracting the syllable 오 and the
  sound 귀)
  도착하였을 + 것 + 이 + 다 (것-incomplete noun 이-ex-
  changing ending 다-low declarative form of the final
  ending of the verbal form)

The ending of the past tense 요 and the attributive ending
of the verb in its future tense 귀 are linked to express
the surmise of a fact in the past.

165 The tenses can also be expressed by other methods.

1. The past can also be expressed by the connecting end-
ing which begins with [do].
for example:

그는 열심히 공부하다니*  
[kunun yolsimi kongbuhadoni]  
he diligently studied as

As he had studied diligently, he succeeded.


explanation:

* 공부하다] study

본부하에더니 [더니-connecting ending of cause]

2. The future can also be expressed by attaching [lgot] to the stem of the word concerned.

for example:

그는 런야 올것이다*  
[kunun raeil olgosida]  
he tomorrow come will

He will come tomorrow.

explanation:

오 + 다] come

오 + [l + 것 + 이 + 다] [联通-attribute ending of the verb in its future tense 것-incomplete noun 이-exchanging ending 다-low declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form]

울것이다 (after contracting the syllable 오 and the sound [l])

166 Table of the tense endings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>tense ending of the tense</th>
<th>present</th>
<th>past</th>
<th>future</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>zero ending</td>
<td>왓[at],</td>
<td>졌[ot],</td>
<td>졌[get],</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>previous</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
RESPECT AND COURTESY

167 Respect is a grammatical category in which the speaker expresses politeness for the doer.

Respect is expressed by the ending of respect 시[si]. The ending of respect 시[si] is attached to the predicative word.

for example:

선생님이 가십니다*. The teacher goes.

[sonsaengnimi kasimnida] the teacher goes

explanation:

* 가 + 다 [ka da] go

가 + 시 + 빌니다 (시-ending of respect 빌니다-most deferential declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

가십니다 (after contracting the syllable 시 and the sound 빌) 선생님 is the owner of the action.
The speaker expresses respect to 선생님 by the ending of respect 시.

168 Courtesy is a grammatical category in which the speaker expresses politeness for the person addressed.

Courtesy is expressed in three forms, namely, the most deferential, middle and low forms.

for example:

○ 아버지가 가십니다*. The father goes.

[abojiga kasimnida] the father goes
explanation:

* 가 + 다 [ka da] go
stem ending
가 + 시 + 빔니다 (시-ending of respect 빔니다-most deferential declarative form of the final ending of the verb)
가실니다 (after contracting the syllable 시 and the sound 빔)

When a speaker speaks to a superior, he expresses courtesy for the person addressed by the most deferential declarative form of the final ending of the verb 빔니다.

○ 아버지가 가시오*. The father goes.
[abojiga kasio] the father goes

explanation:

* 가 + 다 [ka da] go
stem ending
가 + 시 + 오 (시-ending of respect 오-middle declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

When a speaker speaks to a person at the same rank, he expresses courtesy for the person addressed by the middle declarative form of the final ending of the verb 오.

○ 아버지가 가신다*. The father goes.
[abojiga kasinda] the father goes

explanation:

* 가 + 다 [ka da] go
stem ending
가 + 시 + 데니다 (시-ending of respect 데니다-low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)
가신다 (after contracting the syllable 시 and the sound 데)

When a speaker speaks to an inferior, he expresses courtesy for the person addressed by the low declarative form of the final ending of the verb 데니다.
There are two cases in (the relation between) respect and courtesy.

In the first case the person addressed is immediately the doer of an action, etc.

In the second case the person addressed is not the doer of an action, etc.

1. When the person addressed is immediately the doer of an action, etc.

For example:

아버지네 언제 [abojinin onje the father when]

평양에 가실니까 *? pyongyang-e kasimnigga] Pyongyang to go?

Explanation:

가 + 다 [ka da] go stem ending

가 + 시 + 비니까 (시-ending of respect 비니까-most deferential interrogative form of the final ending of the verb) 가실니까 (after contracting the syllable 시 and the sound 비)

The speaker expresses respect for 아버지, the doer of an action, by the ending of respect 시.

The speaker expresses courtesy for the person addressed, who is 아버지, by the most deferential interrogative form 비니까 of the final ending of the verb.

In Korean we do not use the personal pronoun such as you when we speak to a respected person. Instead, we use the denomination of his position in the family or society, such as father, mother and Mr.

2. When the person addressed is not the doer of an action, etc.

1) The speaker expresses respect for the doer of an action, etc.:
for example:

아버지 가 평양에 가신다*. The father goes to Pyongyang.
[abojiga pyongyang-e kasinda] the father Pyongyang to goes

explanation:

* 가 + 다 [ka da] go
stem ending
가 + 시 + 난다 (시-ending of respect 난다-low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)
가신다 (after contracting the syllable 시 and the sound 난)
The speaker speaks to an inferior. For example, a mother speaks to her child.

2) The speaker expresses courtesy for the person addressed:

for example:

그 여 가 평양에 | That child goes to
[ku aega pyongyang-e | Pyongyang.
that child Pyongyang to
감니다*.]
goes

explanation:

* 가 + 다 [ka da] go
stem ending
가 + 비니다 (비니다-most deferential declarative form of the final ending of the verb)
감니다 (after contracting the syllable 가 and the sound 비)
The speaker speaks to a superior.

For example, a son speaks to his father.

There are several words which have the meaning of respect. Such words should be used correctly.
for example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>word</th>
<th>word which has the meaning of respect</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>먹다 [mokda]</td>
<td>잡수시다[chapsusida]</td>
<td>eat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>자다 [chada]</td>
<td>주무시다[chumusida]</td>
<td>sleep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>있다 [itda]</td>
<td>계시다[kesida]</td>
<td>there is, be</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>말하다 [malhada]</td>
<td>말씀하시는다[malssumhasida]</td>
<td>say</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>주다 [chuda]</td>
<td>드리다[turida]</td>
<td>give</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>올리다[ollida]</td>
<td>give</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

for example:

○ 아버지가 주무신다*. The father sleeps.
[abojiga chumusinda] the father sleeps

explanation:

* 주무시 + 다 [jumusi da] sleep
stem ending
주무시 + 니다 (니다- low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)
주무신다 (after contracting the syllable 시 and the sound
리다)
The speaker expresses respect for 아버지, the doer of
an action, by 주무신다.

○ 아이가 잔다*. The child sleeps.
[aiga chanda] the child sleeps

explanation:

* 자 + 다 [cha da] sleep
stem ending
자 + 났다 (-dropdown low declarative form of the final ending
of the verb)
The doer of the action 간다 is the child. Therefore, the speaker does not express respect for the doer of the action.

The word 간다 which has no meaning of respect is used here.

171 Table of the ending of respect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ending of respect</th>
<th>시 [si]</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**WORD ORDER**

172 The ending of the tense comes directly before the final ending.

For example:

О 나는 조선으로 간다*.
[nanun chosonuro kanda] I Korea to go

Explanation:

* 가 + 다 [ka da] go

stem ending

가 + ㄴ다 (ㄴ다 - low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

간다 (after contracting the syllable 가 and the sound ㄴ)

The zero ending of the tense lies directly before the final ending ㄴ다.

О 나는 조선으로 갔다*.
[nanun chosonuro katda] I went to Korea.

Explanation:

* 가 + 다 [ka da] go

stem ending
가 + 았 + 다 (เธ-ending of the past tense 날-low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

The ending of the past tense 았 comes directly before the final ending 다.

나는 조선으로 가겠다.* I will go to Korea.
[nanun chosonuro kageta] Korea to go will

explanation:
* 가 + 다 [ka da] go

stem ending

가 + 됨 + 다 (뜸-ending of the future tense 날-low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)
The ending of the future tense 됨 comes directly before the final ending 다.

173 The ending of respect comes before the final ending. But when there is a tense ending, the ending of respect comes before the ending of the tense.

for example:

아버지께서 공장으로 가신다.* The father goes to the factory.
[abojinun konjang-uuro the father the factory to 가신다.* kasinda] goes

explanation:
* 가 + 다 [ka da] go

stem ending

가 + 시 + 라다 (시-ending of the respect 라-low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)
가신다 (after contracting the syllable 시 and the sound 라) The ending of respect 시 comes before the final ending 라다.

229
LESSON II

THE VOICE

174 The voice is the form of the verb which shows the relation between the action and its agent—the doer, indicating whether the subject of the sentence is the agent or the object of the action expressed by the predicate verb.

There are three voices in Korean—active, passive and causative.

175 1. active voice

The active voice shows that the action is performed by its subject, that the subject is the doer of the action. The active form is expressed by the zero ending.

for example:
That man writes the letter well.

Explanation:

* 쓰 + 다 [ssu da] write

stem ending

쓰 + 이 다 (이 - low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

credible (after contracting the syllable 쓰 and the sound 이)

176 2. The passive voice

The passive voice shows that the subject is the recipient—the object of this action.

The passive voice is expressed by the ending of the voice 이[이], 히[히], 기[기] or 리[리].

For example:

The letter is well on that paper.

written on that paper.

Explanation:

* 쓰 + 다 [ssu da] write

stem ending

쓰 + 이 + 다 (이 - ending of the voice of the passive form 다 - low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

credible (after contracting the syllable 이 and the sound 다)

The action in which the letter is written is expressed by the passive form 쓰인다 which has the ending of the

231
passive voice 이
*2 종이 +에 +는 (종이 - noun 에 - dative ending
는 - auxiliary ending)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ending of the voice of the passive form</th>
<th>end sound of the stem of the word</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>이[i]</td>
<td>vowel, erna[r], ㄱ[g], ㅁ[gg], ㅂ[p], ㅌ[t], ㅍ[h]</td>
<td>보이다[poida] be seen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(보다[poda] see)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이[hi]</td>
<td>냥[p], ㄷ[t], 자[j], ㄱ[k]</td>
<td>박히다[pakida] be struck in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(박다[pakda] strike in)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이[gi]</td>
<td>루[m], ㄷ[t], 자[j], 자[ch], ㅅ[t]</td>
<td>써기다[ssitgida] be washed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(써다[ssitda] wash)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이[ri]</td>
<td>농[l], ㅡ[ru]</td>
<td>날리다[nallida] be flown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(날다[nalda] fly)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

remarks:
We have indicated here only such endings of the voice of
the passive form which are frequently used.

For the other endings of the voice of the passive form, please refer to the appendix.

177 3. The causative form

The causative form is expressed by the ending of the voice 0[i], 6[i], 7[i] or 2[r].

For example:

그는 사람들을 잘
[kunun saramdurul chal]
he the people well
웃긴다*
[utginda]
makes laugh

He's good at making
the people laugh.

Explanation:

* 웃 + 다 [ut da] laugh
stem ending
웃 + 기 + 란다 (기-ending of the voice of the causative form
랜다-low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)
웃긴다 (after contracting the syllable 기 and the sound 란)
The action in which he makes the people laugh is expressed by the causative form 웃긴다 which has the ending of the voice 기.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ending of the voice of the causative form</th>
<th>end sound of the stem of the word</th>
<th>example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0[i]</td>
<td>vowel, 2[r]</td>
<td>먹이다 [mogida] let eat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\text{hi}$</td>
<td>희[p], 흨[t], 약[j], 생[k]</td>
<td>맛하다[anchida] let sit, set (있다[anda] sit)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\text{gi}$</td>
<td>빼[m], 흨[t], 약[j], 생[j], 생[ch], 보[t]</td>
<td>웃기다[utgida] make laugh (웃다[utda] laugh)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\text{ri}$</td>
<td>균[l], 르[ru]</td>
<td>울리다[ullida] make weep (울다[ulda] weep)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Remarks:**
We have indicated here only such endings of the voice of the causative form which are frequently used. For the other endings of the voice of the causative form, please refer to the appendix.

178 The voice may also be expressed as follows:

1. In order to express the passive 되다[toeda] "become", 담하다[tanhada] "suffer", 받다[patda] "receive", 아지다[ajida]/어지다[ojida]/여지다[yojida] "become" or -게 되다[ge toeda] "become", etc. are attached to the root of the verb.
for example:

○ 발전되다 | be developed  [paljondoeda]

   explanation:
   발전하다 + 다 [paljonha da] develop
      stem ending:
   발전 + 하 + 다
      root suffix ending
   발전 + 되다
      verb

○ 파괴당하다 | be destroyed  [pagoedanghada]

   explanation:
   파괴하다 + 다 [pagoeda da] destroy
      stem ending:
   파괴 + 하 + 다
      root suffix ending
   파괴 + 당하다
      verb

○ 착취받다 | be exploited  [chakchwibatda]

   explanation:
   착취하다 + 다 [chakchwiha da] exploit
      stem ending:
   착취 + 하 + 다
      root suffix ending
   착취 + 받아
      verb

○ 탕아지다 | be polished  [taggajida]

   explanation:
   탕 + 다 [tak da] polish
      stem ending:
   탕 + 아 + 지다 (아-connecting ending of method
      or means 지다-verb which is used as an auxiliary)
2. In order to express the causative 시키다[sikida] "let", 게 하다[ge hada] "let" or 도록 하다[dorok hada] "let", etc. are attached to the root of the verb.

For example:
- 공부시키다
  
  [kongbusikida] | make study
  
  **Explanation:**
  공부 + 하 + 다 [kongbuha da] study
  root suffix ending
  공부 + 시키다 make study
  verb

- 먹게 하다
  
  [mokge hada] | let eat
eat let
  
  **Explanation:**
  먹 + 하 [mok da] eat
  stem ending
  먹 + 하다 (하-ending of the adverbial modifier of the verb 하다-verb)

- 먹도록 하다
  
  [mokdorok hada] | let eat
eat let
  
  **Explanation:**
  먹 + 도록 하다 (도록-ending of the adverbial modifier of the verb 하다-verb)

179 Table of endings of the voice

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ending of the voice</th>
<th>form</th>
<th>passive form</th>
<th>causative form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>이[i].</td>
<td>하[i].</td>
<td>기[gi].</td>
<td>리[ri]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>하[hi].</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>기[gi].</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>리[ri]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

236
We have indicated here only such endings of the voice which are frequently used.
For the other endings of the voice, please refer to the appendix.

THE EXCHANGING ENDINGS

180 The exchanging endings are the endings which make the noun, pronoun or numeral into the verbal form or in the reverse the verb, adjective or the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral into the noun.

181 When the noun, pronoun or numeral is made into the verbal form, the exchanging ending 오 [i] is attached to the noun, pronoun or numeral.

for example:

O 평양은
[pyongyang-un
Pyongyang
조선민주주의
chosonminjuju-ui
the Democratic People's
인민공화국의
inmin-gonghwagugui
Republic of Korea of
수도이다*.
sudoida]
the capital is

Pyongyang is the capital of the Democratic People's Republic of Korea.

explanation:

* 수도 + 이 + 다 (수도-noun 이-exchanging ending 다-low declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form)
The exchanging ending 이 is attached to the noun 수도.
다음 차례는 너이다*. Next, it is your turn.

explanation:
* 너 + 이 + 다 (나-pyon 이-exchanging ending 다-low declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form)

The exchanging ending 이 is attached to the pronoun 너.

조선은 하나이다*. Korea is one.

explanation:
* 하나 + 이 + 다 (하나-numeral 이-exchanging ending 다-low declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form)

The exchanging ending 이 is attached to the numeral 하나.

182 When the verb, adjective or the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral is turned into the noun, the exchanging ending □[m] or 가[gi] is attached to the stem of the verb or adjective or to the stem of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral.

For example:

아침에 일찍 일어남은 손상에 좋다.
Getting up early in the morning is good for the health.

explanation:
* 일어나 + 다 (irona da) get up stem ending

일어나 + □ (□- exchanging ending)

일어남 (after contracting the syllable 나 and the sound □)
The exchanging ending 口 is attached to the stem 일어나 of the verb 일어나다.

〇 그는 일하기를*1 좋아한다*2. He likes working.
  [kunun ilhagirul choahanda]  he working likes
  explanation:
  *1 일하 + 다 [ilha da] work
  stem ending
  일하 + 기 + 줄(기-exchanging ending 줄-accusative end-
ing)
  The exchanging ending 기 is attached to the stem 일하 of the verb 일하다.

*2 좋 + 다 [cho ta] good
  stem ending
  좋+아+하다 (아-connecting ending of method or means
  하다-verb which is used as an auxiliary do)
  stem ending
  좋+아+하+다
  좋+아+하+ㄴ다 (ㄴ다-low declarative form of the final
  ending of the verb)
  좋아하다 (after contracting the syllable 하 and sound ㄴ)

〇 나는 아침에 일찍 일어남이 일.cloud
  [nanun achime iljjik I the morning in early
  일어남이 일.cloud
  ironami kon.gang.e
  getting up health to

  性愛 + 을*1 + 단*2.  京愛 + 을 (을-link-vowel 을-exchanging ending
  choumul anda]  good being know
  explanation:
  *1 좋 + 다 [cho ta] good
  stem ending
  좋+으+口+율(으-link-vowel 口-exchanging ending
울 - accusative ending

The exchanging ending ㅁ is attached to the stem ㄴ of the adjective ㄷ by the link-vowel ㅗ.

* 알고 다 [al da] know

stem ending
 알고 다 (다 - low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

The exchanging ending ㅁ is attached to the stem ㄴ.

The exchanging ending ㅁ is attached to the noun ㄴ.

나는 주체 조선의
I Juche Korea of

권민임을 ㅊ 자랑한다.
citizen being proud

explanation:

* 권민 + 음 + 다 [kongmini da] citizen be

(권민 - noun 음 - exchanging ending 다 - low declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form)

The exchanging ending ㅁ is attached to the exchanging ending 음, and the exchanging ending 음 is attached to the noun 권민.

The exchanging ending should be used correctly.

1. The exchanging ending 음 can be omitted after noun, pronoun or numeral which ends in a vowel.

for example:

그는 의사다.  /*  asteroid */
[he is a doctor.]

183
The exchanging ending 이 is not omitted in the attributive form.

For example:

의사인 Kim
[kimdongmu] Kim comrade
doctor being Kim comrade

Comrade Kim, a doctor

The exchanging ending 이 makes the verb, adjective and the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral into a noun.

The exchanging ending 기 makes the verb, adjective and the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral into a noun and also expresses the process of the action.

For example:

의사가 되기 전에

[toegijone] before

a doctor becoming first

Man must become a revolutionary before becoming a doctor.

Explanations:

* 의사 + 이 + 다 (의사 - noun 이 - exchanging ending 다 - low declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form)

* 의사 + 이 + [toe da] become stem ending

* 의사인 ( 의사 - noun 이 - exchanging ending 다 - attributive ending of the verbal form in its present tense)

* 의사인 (after contracting the syllable 이 and the sound 다)

2. The exchanging ending 이 makes the verb, adjective and the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral into a noun.

The exchanging ending 기 makes the verb, adjective and the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral into a noun and also expresses the process of the action.

For example:

의사가 되기 전에* 먼저

[toe da] become

a doctor becoming before first

Man must become a revolutionary before becoming a doctor.

Explanations:

* 의사 + 이 + 다 (의사 - noun 이 - exchanging ending 다 - low declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form)

* 의사 + 이 + 다 (The exchanging ending 이 can be omitted.)
The exchanging ending makes the verb 되다 into the noun and also expresses the process of becoming a doctor.

3. The substantivized form by the exchanging ending 口 [m] can also be used as a predicate.

For example:

오늘은 날씨가 맑음
(onurun nalssiga today the weather)

The weather is clear today.

Explanation:

* 맑 + 다 [mak da] clear
stem ending

鎌 + 오 + 口 (오-link-vowel 口-exchanging ending)
鎌음 (after contracting the syllable 오 and the sound 口)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table of the exchanging endings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ending</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exchanging ending</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

LESSON 12

THE AUXILIARY ENDINGS

The auxiliary endings are attached to various kinds of words. These endings are used to express relations among objects and phenomena as well as actions and states.
There are the following auxiliary endings:

- 를 [nun] (_imgs[n])/은 [un]
- 야 [ya] / 이야 [iya]
- 나 [na] / 이나 [ina]
- 커녕 [konyong]
- 도 [do]

There is a difference between the auxiliary endings and the case endings.

As mentioned, the auxiliary endings express relations among objects and phenomena as well as actions and states.

But the case endings express the connective relations between words.

For example:

올해에는 과일도* 잘 
[olhaeennun kwaildo chal this year in the fruit also well
되었다. toeyotda] became

**explanation:**

* 과일 + 도

_noun_ auxiliary ending

The auxiliary ending 도 expresses the relation between the fruit and other agricultural products such as grain, vegetables, and so on.

For example:

올해에는 과일이* 잘 되었다.
[olhaeennun kwairi chal toeyotda] this year in the fruit good became

**explanation:**

* 과일 + 이

_noun_ nominative ending

The nominative ending 이 expresses the relation between
187 The auxiliary endings are divided as follows according to the content of the relations which the auxiliary endings express:

1. The auxiliary ending which expresses the relation of inclusion
   도[do] also
   for example:
   올해에는 난세도* The vegetable also grew well this year.
   [olhaeenun namsaedo this year in the vegetable also 잘 되었다.]
   chal toeyotda] well became

   explanation:
   * 난세 + 도 noun auxiliary ending of inclusion
     The auxiliary ending 도 expresses the idea that agricultural products including the vegetables have grown well.

2. The auxiliary ending which expresses restriction
   만[man] alone
   for example:
   나만* 간다. I go alone.
   [naman kanda] I only go

   explanation:
   * 나 + 만 pronoun auxiliary ending of restriction
     The auxiliary ending 만 expresses that I and no one else go alone.

3. The auxiliary endings which express the relation of
limitation: 부터[buto] from 까지[ggaji] till

for example:
1926 year from 1989 year till

explanation:
*1 1926년 noun 부터 auxiliary ending of limitation
*2 1989년 noun 까지 auxiliary ending of limitation

4. The auxiliary ending which express the relation of indication 는[nun] ( disgr.) 은[un] for example:
○ 나는* 갓다. [nanun kanda] I go.

explanation:
* 나는 pronoun 는 auxiliary ending of indication

The auxiliary ending 는 expresses that no one other than I go.
The auxiliary ending 는 is used when the word to which the auxiliary ending 는 is attached ends in a vowel.
○ 난* 갓다. [nan kanda] I go.

explanation:
* 나는 pronoun 는 auxiliary ending of indication
한 (after contracting the syllable ㅂ and the sound ㅅ)

The auxiliary ending ㅅ expresses that no one other than I go.

The auxiliary ending ㅅ is used when the word to which the auxiliary ending ㅅ is attached ends in a vowel.

○ 하늘은* 푸르다. | The sky is blue.
[hanurun puruda] the sky blue

 explanation:

* 하늘 + 은
noun auxiliary ending of indication

The auxiliary ending 은 expresses that nothing other than the sky is blue.

The auxiliary ending 은 is used when the word to which the auxiliary ending 은 is attached ends in a consonant.

5. The auxiliary endings which express the emphasis

아[ya] / 이아[iya]

for example:

남이야* 가든지 말든지 [namiya kadunji maldunji just others go or not
너는 가야 한다. nonun kaya handa] you go must

You must go whether others go or not.

 explanation:

* 남 + 이야
noun auxiliary ending of emphasis

The auxiliary ending 이야 is used when the word to which the auxiliary ending 이야 is attached ends in a consonant.

The auxiliary ending 아 is used when the word to which the auxiliary ending 아 is attached ends in a vowel.

6. The auxiliary ending which expresses the relation of concession

나[na] / 이나[ina]
for example:

그 한테 나* 가지!
[ku hantena kaja]

Let us go to him!

(him to let us go!)

(나—even if he is not the very man we want)

explanation:

* 그 + 한테 + 나 [그—pronoun 한테—ending which is used as the case ending (refer to 189) 나—auxiliary ending of concession]

The auxiliary ending 나 expresses that he is not the very man we want.

The auxiliary ending 나 is used when the word to which the auxiliary ending 나 is attached ends in a vowel.

The auxiliary ending 이나 is used when the word to which the auxiliary ending 이나 is attached ends in a consonant.

7. The auxiliary ending which expresses negation [konyong]

for example:

비는 커녕* 구름 한점
[pinunkonyong kurum hanjom]

Far from raining, it was a cloudless day.

rain far from cloud a piece

있는

omnun

not there being weather was nalssiyotda]

explanation:

* 비 + 는 + 커녕 (비—noun 는—auxiliary ending of indication 커녕—auxiliary ending of negation)

The auxiliary ending 커녕 is usually used together with the auxiliary ending 는 or 은.

The auxiliary ending 는 is attached to a syllable which ends in a vowel.

The auxiliary ending 은 is attached to a syllable which ends in a consonant.
### Table of auxiliary endings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>meaning</th>
<th>auxiliary ending</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>relation of inclusion</td>
<td>도 [do] also</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relation of restriction</td>
<td>만 [man] only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relation of limitation</td>
<td>부터 [buto] from,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>까지 [ggaji] till</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relation of indication</td>
<td>는 [nun] (n) / 은 [un]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relation of emphasis</td>
<td>야 [ya] / 이야 [iya]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relation of concession</td>
<td>나 [na] / 이나 [ina]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relation of negation</td>
<td>커녕 [konyong]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Remarks:**

We have indicated here only such auxiliary endings which are frequently used. For the other auxiliary endings, please refer to the appendix.

### ENDINGS WHICH ARE USED AS CASE ENDINGS

189 There are the following endings which are used as case endings:

1. 란 [ran] / 이란 [iran]

These endings perform the function of nominative endings and are used to give a definition to the word acting as the subject.
In a nutshell, the idea of Juche means that the masters of the revolution and construction are the masses of the people and that they are also the motive force of the revolution and construction.

Explanation:

* 주체사상 + 이란 (주체사상 - noun 이란 - ending which is used as the case ending)

The ending 이란 which expresses a case is used when the word to which the ending 이란 is attached ends in a consonant.

The ending 란 which expresses a case is used when the word to which the ending 란 is attached ends in a vowel.

2. 한례 [hante]

This ending is mostly used in spoken language and serves the function of a dative ending.
for example:

그는 나한례* 묻는다.  He asks me.
[kunun nahante munnunda]
he me to asks

explanation:
* 나 + 한례(나—pronoun 한례—ending which is used as the case ending)

3. 하고[hago]
This ending serves the same function as that of the ending of the coordinative case.

for example:

김동무 하고* 나  Comrade Kim and I
[kimdongmuhago na]
Kim comrade and I

explanation:
* 김동무 + 하고(김동무—noun 하고—ending which is used as the case ending)

4. 보다[boda] (more) than
처럼 [chorom] as, 마다[mada] every

The endings 보다, 처럼 are used to express comparison.

for example:

○ 그는 나보다* 크다.  He is bigger than I.
[kunun naboda kuda]
he I than big

explanation:
* 나 + 보다(나—pronoun 보다—ending which is used as the case ending)

○ 눈 처럼* 흰   white as snow
[nunchorom huin]
snow as white
explanation:
* 년 + 치림 (년 - noun 치림 - ending which is used as the case ending)

○ 해마다 (he - noun 마다 - ending which is used as the case ending)

190 Table of endings which are used as case endings:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>case</th>
<th>ending which is used as the case ending</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nominative</td>
<td>랭 [ran] / 이란 [iran]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dative</td>
<td>한데 [hante]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coordinative</td>
<td>하고 [hago]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>others</td>
<td>보다 [boda] / 치림 [chorom] / 마다 [mada]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

remarks:
We have indicated here only such endings which are frequently used.
For the other endings, please refer to the appendix.

LESSON 13

STEM AED ENDING

191 The distinction between the stem and the ending is clear in the formation of Korean words.
When a certain grammatical meaning is necessary, the
ending to express it is attached to the stem, when unnecessary, some omissions are made.

for example:

보고 + 다 [po da] see

in order to express respect
보고 + 시 + 다 [po si da] see

(시—ending of respect)

in order to express the causative
보고 + ㅇ [po i da] show

(ㅇ—ending of the causative voice)

in order to express the past
보고 + 왔 + 다 [po at da] saw

( yat—ending of the past tense)

In order to express both the causative and respect, the ending of the causative voice ㅇ [i] and the ending of respect 시[si] are attached to the stem.

보고 + ㅇ + 시 + 다 [po i si da] show

(ㅇ—ending of the causative voice 시—ending of respect)

In order to express both the causative and the past, the ending of the causative voice ㅇ [i] and the ending of the past tense 왔 [yot] are attached to the stem.

보고 + ㅇ + 왔 + 다 [po i yot da] showed

(ㅇ—ending of the causative voice 왔—ending of the past tense)

In order to express both respect and the past, the ending of respect 시[si] and the ending of the past tense 왔 [yot] are attached to the stem.

보고 + 시 + 왔 + 다 [po si yot da] saw

(시—ending of respect 왔—ending of the past tense)

In order to express causative, respect and the past simultaneously, the ending of the causative voice ㅇ [i].
the ending of respect 시[si] and the ending of the past tense 엣[yot] are attached to the stem.

보 + 이 + 시 + 엣 + 다[po i si yot da] showed
(이-ending of the causative voice 시-ending of respect 엣-ending of the past tense)

When the grammatical meaning of the causative in 보이시였다[poisiyotda] "showed" is not necessary, the ending of the causative voice 이[i] is omitted.

보 + 시 + 엣 + 다[po si yot da] saw
(시-ending of respect 엣-ending of the past tense)

When the grammatical meaning of the past in 보이시였다[poisiyotda] "showed" is not necessary, the ending of the past tense 엣[yot] is omitted.

보 + 이 + 시 + 다[po i si da] show
(이-ending of the causative voice 시-ending of respect)

When the grammatical meanings of the causative and respect in 보이시였다[poisiyotda] "showed" are not necessary, the ending of the causative voice 이[i] and the ending of respect 시[si] are omitted.

In this case the ending of the past tense is directly attached to the stem. The stem 보[po] has the vowel 엣[o]. Therefore, not the ending of the past 엣[yot] but the ending of the past tense 엣[yot] is attached to the stem.

보 + 엣 + 다[po at da] saw
(蓊-ending of the past tense)

When the grammatical meanings of respect and the past in 보이시였다[poisiyotda] "showed" are not necessary, the ending of respect 시[si] and the ending of the past tense 엣[yot] are omitted.

보 + 이 + 다[po i da] show
(이-ending of the causative voice)
When the grammatical meanings of the causative and the past in 보이시였다 [poisiyotda] “showed” are not necessary, the ending of the causative voice 이 [i] and the ending of the past tense 었 [yot] are omitted.

보 + 시 + 다 [po si da] see

시 - ending of respect

When the grammatical meanings of the causative, respect and the past in 보이시였다 [poisiyotda] “showed” are not necessary, the ending of the causative voice 이 [i], the ending of respect 시 [si] and the ending of the past tense 었 [yot] are omitted.

보 + 다 [po da] see

stem ending

ATTACHING OF ENDINGS

192 The endings are attached one by one.

for example:

공장 에서의 모임 [kongjang esoui moim]
the factory in the meeting

explanation:

공장 + 에서 noun locative ending

First, the locative ending 에서 is attached to the noun 공장.

공장에서 + 의 genitive ending

Next, the genitive ending 의 is attached to 공장에서.

PAIRS OF ENDINGS

193 There are pairs of endings which have the same grammatical meaning. Their usage differs according to the last sounds which the stems have.

for example:
1. 나무 가*1 높다. | The tree is high.
[namuga nopda] the tree high
물 이*2 맑다. | The water is clear.
[muri makda] the water clear

explanation:
*1 나무 + 가
noun nominative ending
*2 물 + 이
noun nominative ending

The endings 가 and 이 form a pair of nominative endings.
The nominative ending 가 is attached to a word which ends in a vowel.
The nominative ending 이 is attached to a word which ends in a consonant.

2. 노래 와*1 층 | song and dance
[noraewa chum] song and dance
층 과*2 노래 | dance and song
[chungwa norae] dance and song

explanation:
*1 노래 + 와
noun ending of the coordinative case
*2 층 + 과
noun ending of the coordinative case

The endings 와 and 과 form a pair of endings of the coordinative case.
The ending of the coordinative case 와 is attached to a word which ends in a vowel.
The ending of the coordinative case 과 is attached to a word which ends in a consonant.
3. 나는 가오*₁.
[nanun kao]  
I go.
그는 갓소*₂.
[kunun katso]  
he went

explanation:
*₁ 가 + 다 [ka da] go  
stem ending
가 + 오 (오-middle declarative form of the final ending of the verb)
*₂ 가 + 앗 + 소 (앗-ending of the past tense 소-middle declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

The final endings 오 and 소 form a pair of final endings. The final ending 오 is attached to a stem which ends in a vowel. The final ending 소 is attached to a stem which ends in a consonant.

THE LINK-VOWEL

194 When an ending which begins with a consonant is attached to a word or stem which ends in a consonant, the syllable 오[i] or 오[u] is inserted between them in some cases.

This syllable 오[i], or 오[u] is called the link-vowel.

1. syllable 오[i]

for example
○ 책 + 오 + 나마 [chaeg i nama] though the book
noun link-vowel auxiliary ending

explanation:
The link-vowel 오 is inserted between the noun 책 which
ends in a consonant and the auxiliary ending which begins with a consonant.

○ 그들 + 오 + 나마 [ku duri nama] though they

*pronoun link-vowel auxiliary ending*

*explanation:*
The link-vowel 오 is inserted between the pronoun 그들 which ends in a consonant and the auxiliary ending 나마 which begins with a consonant.

○ 들 + 오 + 나마 [tur i nama] though two

*numeral link-vowel auxiliary ending*

*explanation:*
The link-vowel 오 is inserted between the numeral 들 which ends in a consonant and the auxiliary ending 나마 which begins with a consonant.

○ 책 + 오 + 다 [chaeg i da] it's a book

*[책-noun 오-exchanging ending (link-vowel) 다-low declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form]*

*remarks:*
The syllable 오 which is inserted between the stem and predicative ending is the exchanging ending.

**2. The syllable 오[u]**

*for example*

○ 책 + 오 + 로 [chaeg u ro] with the book

*noun link-vowel instrumental ending*

○ 이것 + 오 + 로 [igos u ro] with this

*pronoun link-vowel instrumental ending*

○ 셋 + 오 + 로 [ses u ro] with three

*numeral link-vowel instrumental ending*

○ 읽으며 [ilgumyo] read and

읽 + 다 [ik da] read

*stem ↓ ending*

읽 + 오 + 머 (오-link-vowel 머-copulative connecting ending)
THE VOCAL HARMONY

195 The vocal harmony

1. when the vowel ㅏ[a], ㅑ[ya] or ㅓ[o] is in the last syllable of the stem, the ending ㅓ[a], ㅏ[ara], ㅓ[ado] or ㅏ[at] is attached to the stem.

for example:

막 + 다  [mak da] block

stem ending

막 + 아  [mag a] blocking
(아—connecting ending of method or means)

막 + 아라  [mag ara] block!
(아라—low imperative form of the final ending of the verb)

막 + 아니도  [mag ado] even if block
(아도—connecting ending of condition)

막 + 안 + 다  [mag at da] blocked
(안—ending of the past tense 다—low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

remarks:
The verb 하다[hada] “do” is excluded here. Although the stem 하 of the verb 하다 has the vowel ㅏ, the ending 여[yo], 여라[yora], 여도[yodo] or 여여[yot] is attached to the stem 하.

for example

하 + 다  [ha da] do
stem ending
O 하 + 여 [ha yo] doing
(여—connecting ending of method or means)

O 하 + 여라 [ha yora] do!
(여라—low imperative form of the final
ending of the verb)

O 하 + 여도 [ha yodo] even if do
(여도—connecting ending of condition)

O 하 + 옛 + 다 [ha yot da] did
(옛—ending of the past tense 다—low declarative
form of the final ending of the verb)

2. When the vowel [o], [yo], [u], [u] or [i] is
in the last syllable of the stem, the ending 여[o], 여라
[ora], 여도[yodo] or 옛[yot] is attached to the stem.

for example:

먹 + 다 [mok da] eat

stem ending

O 먹 + 여 [mog o] eating
(여—connecting ending of method or means)

O 먹 + 여라 [mog ora] eat!
(여라—low imperative form of the final ending of the verb)

O 먹 + 여도 [mog odo] even if eat
(여도—connecting ending of condition)

O 먹 + 옛 + 다 [mog ot da] ate
(옛—ending of the past tense 다—low declarative
form of the final ending of the verb)

3. when the stem ends in the vowel [i], [ae], [e], [e]
[oe], [wi], [ui] or syllable 하[ha] in its last syllable,
the ending 여[yo], 여라[yora], 여도[yodo] or 옛[yot]
is attached to the stem.
196 The exchange of sounds is also made partly in Korean when some endings are attached to stems.

In such cases the changed sound also belongs to the stem.

The exchange of sounds is as follows:

1. The last syllable ㄹ[ru] of the stem of the verb or adjective is changed to 르[ll] before the connecting ending of method or means 여[o], before the ending of the past tense 였[ot] or before the low imperative form of the final ending of the verb 여라[ora].

for example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>stem</th>
<th>ending</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>иметь</td>
<td>have</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+ 여 [kaji yo] having</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(여—a connecting ending of method or means)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>stem</th>
<th>ending</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>+ 여라 [kaji yora] have!</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(여라—a low imperative form of the final ending of the verb)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>stem</th>
<th>ending</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>+ 여도 [kaji yodo] even if have</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(여도—a connecting ending of condition)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>stem</th>
<th>ending</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>+ 옛 + 다 [kaji yot da] had</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(옛—a ending of past 다—a low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

THE EXCHANGE OF SOUNDS
The last syllable 르 of the stem 흔른 of the verb 흔르다 is changed to 르 before the connecting ending of method or means 어.

研究所 에서 (after contracting the syllable 흔 and the sound 어)
研究所 에서 (after contracting the sound 어 and the syllable 어)

○ 흔렸다 [hullotda] flowed

- 흔 혼+ 어 (after-Ending of the past tense 다-low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

The last syllable 르 of the stem 흔른 of the verb 흔르다 is changed to 르 before the ending of the past tense 었.

研究所 에서 흔 혼 었 + 다 (after contracting the syllable 흔 and the sound 어)
研究所 에서 흔 혼 었 + 다 (after contracting the sound 어 and the syllable 어)

○ 흔리라 [hullora] flow!

- 흔 혼 어라 (여라-low imperative form of the final ending of the verb)

The last syllable 르 of the stem 흔른 of the verb 흔르다 is changed to 르 before the low imperative form of the final ending of the verb 어라.

研究所 에서 흔 혼 어라 (after contracting the syllable 흔 and the sound 어)
研究所 에서 흔 혼 어라 (after contracting the sound 어 and the syllable 어)

2. The last consonant [t] of the stem of the verb is partly changed to [r] before an ending which begins with a vowel and before an ending which requires the link-vowel [u].
for example:

examples:

for example:

The last consonant ㄷ of the stem 들 of the verb 들다 is changed to ㄹ before the connecting ending of method or means 어 which begins with a vowel.

The last consonant ㄷ of the stem 들 of the verb 들다 is changed to ㄹ before the connecting ending of method or means 어 which begins with a vowel.

The last consonant ㅂ of the stem 도 of the verb 도다 is changed to 오 before the connecting ending of method or means 아 which begins with a vowel.

The last consonant ㅂ of the stem 도 of the verb 도다 is changed to 오 before the connecting ending of method or means 아 which begins with a vowel.
is changed to ㅗ before the connecting ending of cause ㄴ which requires the link-vowel ㅗ.

4. The last syllable 르[ru] of the stem 누르[nuru] of the adjective 누르다[nuruda], the last syllable 르[ru] of the stem 푸르[puru] of the adjective 푸르다[puruda] and the last syllable 르[ru] of the stem 이르[iru] of the verb 이르다[iruda] are changed to 르[ru] 일[?] before an ending which begins with a vowel.

for example:
누르 + 다 [nuru da] golden

stem ending
누 + 르 + 여 (여—connecting ending of method or means)

The last syllable 르 of the stem 누르 of the adjective 누르다 is changed to 르 before the connecting ending of method or means 여 which begins with a vowel.
누르려 (after contracting the sound 일 and the syllable 여)

for example:
푸르 + 다 [puru da] blue

stem ending
푸 + 르 + 엇 + 다 (엇—ending of the past tense
나—low declarative form of the final ending of the adjective)

The last syllable 르 of the stem 푸르 of the adjective 푸르다 is changed to 르 before the ending of the past tense 엇 which begins with a vowel.
푸르쳤다 (after contracting the sound 일 and the syllable 엇)

for example:
이르 + 다 [iru da] arrive

stem ending

이 + 르라 + 어라 (어라—low imperative form of the final ending of the verb)

The last syllable 르 of the stem이르 of the verb 이르다 is changed to 르라 before the low imperative form of the final ending of the verb 어라 which begins with a vowel.

이르러라 (after contracting the sound 르 and the syllable 어)

5. The last sound 르[l] of the stem of the verb or adjective disappears before an ending which begins with 루 [n] or 루[p] and before the ending 시 [si] or 오[o].

for example:

울 + 다 [ul da] weep

stem ending

○ 우는 [unun] weeping

우 + 는 (는—attributive ending of the verb in its present tense)

The last sound 르 of the stem울 of the verb 울다 disappears before the attributive ending of the verb in its present tense 는 which begins with 루.

○ 응니다 [umnida] weep

우 + 비니다 (비니다—most deferential declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

The last sound 르 of the stem울 of the verb울다 disappears before the most deferential declarative form of the final ending of the verb 비니다 which begins with 비.

응니다 (after contracting the syllable 우 and the sound 르)
The last sound オ of the stem of the verb オタ disappearance before the ending of respect シ.

The last sound オ of the stem オ of the verb オタ disappearance before the middle declarative form of the final ending of the verb オ.

6. The last sound タ[ト] of the stem of the verb or adjective disappears before an ending which begins with a vowel and before an ending which requires the link vowel オ.

For example:

窄 + 多 [ナット] cure

窄 = stem

窄 + 多 = ending

The last sound タ of the stem 窄 of the verb 窄タ disappears before the connecting ending of method or means サシ which begins with a vowel.

窄 + サシ + 多 [ナサシ] cure and

窄 + オ + 多 [ナオタ] cure and

窄 + オ = link-vowel

窄 + オ + 多 = copulative connecting ending

The last sound タ of the stem 窄 of the verb 窄タ disappears before the copulative connecting ending.
며 which requires the link-vowel ㅇ.

7. The last sound ㅇ [h] of the stem of an adjective disappears before an ending which begins with a vowel.

for example:

빨강 + 다 [bbalga ta] red

빨가오 [bbalgao] red

빨가 + 오 (ㅇ-middle declarative form of the final ending of the adjective)

The last sound ㅇ of the stem 빨강 of the adjective 빨강다 disappears before the middle declarative form of the final ending of the adjective ㅇ which begins with a vowel.

LESSON 14

THE PARTS OF THE SENTENCE

197 There are eleven parts of the sentence in Korean.

1. The predicate
2. The subject
3. The object
4. The quotation
5. The adverbial modifier
6. The attribute
7. The form of address
8. The parenthesis
9. The exclamatory word
10. The conjunctive
11. The appended modifier
The part of the sentence as a unit performs its own function in the sentence, but its composition differs. Accordingly the simple part of the sentence and the expanded part of the sentence are distinguished.

The simple part of the sentence is the part of the sentence which consists of an independent word or of a combination of words which is used as one word.

For example:

조선은
[chosonun]

아름다운
[arumdap]

 나라이다
[naraida]

Korea is a beautiful country.

Explanation:

*1: 조선 + 은
noun auxiliary ending
조선은 is the subject which consists of the noun 조선 and the auxiliary ending 은.
조선은 is the simple part of sentence which consists of one independent word.

*2: 아름답 + 다 [arumdap da] beautiful
stem ending
아름다 + 우 + 람 [(ـattributive ending of the adjective in its present tense) after exchanging the sound 우 for the syllable 우(refer to 196)]
아름다운 (after contracting the syllable 우 and the sound 람)
아름다운 is the attribute which consists of the adjective 아름다운.
아름다운 is the simple part of sentence which consists of one independent word.

*3: 나라 + 이 + 다 (이-exchanging ending 다-low declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form)
 나라이다 is the predicate which consists of the noun 나라, the exchanging ending 이 and the low declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form 다.
The simple part of a sentence which consists of one independent word.

The expanded part of the sentence is the part of the sentence which is formed by the syntactical combination of two or more independent words.

For example:

사람은 자연과 사회의

[Man is the master of nature and society]

사람은 자연과 사회의

[the man nature and society of]

주인이며 세상에서

[the master is and the world in]

가장 귀중하고 가장

[most precious and most]

힘있는 존재이다.

[powerful being is]

explanation:

*1

자연+과 사회+의 (자연--noun 과--ending of the coordinative case 사회--noun 의--genitive ending)

자연과 사회의 is the syntactical combination of two independent words 자연 and 사회.

자연과 사회의 is the expanded part of the sentence.

*2

세상+에서 가장 귀중하고 가장 힘있+는

[The most precious and powerful being in the world]

세상--noun 에서--locative ending 가장--adverb 귀중하다--stem of the adjective 귀중하다 고--copulative connecting ending 가장--adverb 힘--noun 있--stem of the verb 있다 놀--attributive ending of the verb in its present tense

The above-mentioned combination of words is the syntactical combination of two or more independent words and the expanded part of the sentence.
THE PREDICATE

201 The predicate is the part of the sentence which is used to express the action, state or character of an object.

The predicate answers the question of "who is?", "what is?" "how does?" or "how is?" in the sentence.

for example:

○ (who is?)
우리는 관광객들입니다.  
We are tourists.

○ (what is?)
함흥은 공업도시이다.  
Hamhung is an industrial city.

○ (how does?)
그는 피시즘을 반대하여 싸웠다.  
He fought against fascism.

○ (how is?)
조선의 가을하늘은 끝없이 맑다.  
The autumn sky in Korea is extremely clear.

202 The predicates are classified as the final predicate
and the connecting predicate.

1. The final predicate
The final predicate comes at the end of the sentence and closes the sentence.

The final predicate is expressed as follows:

1) The final form of a word becomes the final predicate.

for example:
저는 영국으로 돌아갑니다.*
[chonun yong·guguro toragamnida]
I go back to England.

explanation:
* 돌아가 + 다 [toraga da] go back
stem ending
d 돌아가 + 비니다 (비니다—most deferential declarative form of the final ending of the verb)
d 돌아갑니다 (after contracting the syllable 가 and the sound ㅂ)
The final form 돌아갑니다 of the verb 돌아가다 lies at the end of the sentence and becomes the final predicate.

2) The connecting form of a word becomes the final predicate.

for example:
동무는 레일 런던으로 떠나다면서*
[tongmunun raeil tongmunun ddonandamyonso]
You leave for London tomorrow, don’t you?

explanation:
* 떠나 + 다 [ddona da] leave
stem ending
떠나 + 라다 + 면서 (라다—low declarative form of the final ending of the verb 면서—copulative connect-
ing ending)

After contracting the syllable 나 and the sound יך.

The connecting form 마나면서 of the verb 마나다 comes at the end of the sentence and becomes the final predicate.

3) The final predicate is also formed by attaching an exchanging ending to the stem of the word.

For example:
저녁에 모임이 있음*.
[chonyoge moimi issum] The evening in a meeting is

Explanation:
* 있 + 다 [it da] be
stem ending

The substantive form 있음 of the verb 있다 comes at the end of the sentence and becomes the final predicate.

4) Sometimes, a word without any ending becomes the final predicate.

For example:
우리은 영용한
[urinun yong-yonghan we heroic and brave
조선인민군*.
chosoninmin-gun]
Korean People’s Army

Explanation:
* 조선 + 인민 + 군
noun noun noun

The noun 조선인민군 lies at the end of the sentence and becomes the final predicate.

2. The connecting predicate lies before the final predicate.
The connecting predicate expresses that a sentence is not closed yet and connects two units of the sentence. The connecting predicate is usually expressed by the connecting form.

1) The connecting form of a word becomes the connecting predicate.

For example:

하늘은 [hanurun] the sky
푸르고 [purugo] blue
내 마음 [nae maum] my heart
chezigda. merry

Explanation:

* [puru da] copulative connecting ending

2) The final form of a word becomes the connecting predicate.

For example:

[ nari ] the day
[ palgatda ] dawned
[ an-gaega ] the fog
[ chaukada ] dense

Explanation:

* [pak da] low declarative form of the final ending of the verb

The final form 빛나다 of the verb 빛나 becomes the connecting predicate.
3) In Korean there are nouns and adverbs which perform the function of connection. Some such nouns are 동시[tongsi] “same time”, 반면[panmyon] “contrary”, 한편[hanpyon] “one side”, 일방[ilbang] “one side”, 이상[isang] “over” and 한[han] “limit”, etc. And we can cite 겸[kyom] “and concurrently” as an example of such adverbs.

Those words become the connecting predicate together with the attributive form of the word which lies before them.

for example:

그는 소설가인 [kunun sosolgain he a novelist being 동시에* 시인이다. tongsie siinida] the same time at a poet is

He is both a novelist and a poet.

explanation:

* 소설가 + 이 + 및 동시 + 에 (소설가—noun 이—exchanging ending 및—attributive ending of the verbal form in its present tense 동 시—noun 에—dative ending)

소설가인 동시에 (after contracting the syllable 이 and the sound &)

203 Between the connecting predicate and the final predicate such a phenomenon is found as the grammatical meaning which is expressed in the final predicate has something to do with the connecting predicate. It is expressed as follows:

1. By the ending of respect

for example:
Father listened to me and said thus.

The father my word heard thus said

d고* 이렇게 말씀하시였다.
tutgo iroke malssumhasiyotda]

explanation:

* 들 + 다 [tut da] hear
stem ending

d + 고 (고—copulative connecting ending)
The meaning of respect which must be expressed in the connecting form 들고 of the verb 들다 has been expressed by the ending of respect 시 in the final form 말씀하시였다 of the verb 말씀하다.

2. By the ending of the tense

for example:

Although the wind blew, it was not strong.

바람은 불어도*
[paramun purodo
the wind blew although
세지 않았다.
seji anatda]

strong not was

explanation:

* 불 + 다 [pul da] blow
stem ending

불 + 여도 (여도—connecting ending of condition)
The meaning of the past which must be expressed in the connecting form 불여도 of the verb 불다 has been expressed by the ending of the past tense 았 in the final form 았다 of the adjective 았다.

3. By the final ending

for example:

Let us dance and sing!

춤을 추고* 노래를
[chumul chugo noraeul
the dance and the song

274
부름시다.
purupsida
sing!

explanation:

* 추 + 다 [chu da] dance
  stem ending

추 + 고 (고－copulative connecting ending)
The meaning of suggestion which must be expressed in
the connecting form 추고 of the verb 추다 has been ex¬
pressed by the ending of the most deferential sugges¬
tive form 비시다 in the final form 부름시다 of the verb
부르다.

4. By the word which is used as an auxiliary

for example:

우리는 이 달의
[urinun i darui we this month of
생산계획도
saengsan-gyehoekdo production plan also
완수하고*1 래달의
wansuhago raedarui
fulfil and next month of
생산계획도
saengsan-gyehoekdo production plan also
완수하고야 말것이다*2.
wansuhagoya malgosida]
fulfil surely shall

explanation:

*1 완수하 + 다 [wansuha da] fulfil
  stem ending

완수하 + 고 (고－copulative connecting ending)
The modal meaning of conviction which must be express¬
ed in the connecting form 완수하고 of the verb 완수하

We shall surely fulfil
the production plan
for this month as well
as next month.

275
다 has been expressed by the word 말것이다 which is used as an auxiliary.

*2 완수하 + 다 [wansuha da] fulfil

stem ending

완수하 + 고 + 야 말다 [wansuha go ya malda] fulfil surely (고—copulative connecting ending 야—auxiliary ending of emphasis 말다—verb which is used as an auxiliary)

완수하 + 고 + 야 말 + 것 + 이 + 다 (것—incomplete noun 이—exchanging ending 다—low declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form)

When the connecting predicate and the final predicate are related to different subjects, there is no relation in the grammatical meaning between the connecting predicate and the final predicate.

for example:

그는 왔으니까 저는 [kunun wassunigga chonun he came as I 가겠습니까. kagetsumnida] go will

As he came, I will go.

explanation:
The person who came is he, and the person who will go is I.

Therefore, there is no relation in grammatical meaning between the connecting predicate 왔으니까 and the final predicate 가겠습니까.

THE SUBJECT

204 The subject is the doer of the action, etc. expressed by the predicate.

But the subject can be omitted in some cases.
The subject is expressed mainly by the noun, pronoun, numeral or the substantive.

1. The subject is expressed by attaching one of the following endings to the word:
   - the nominative ending 까서[geso], 가[ka] or 오[i]
   - the ending which is used as the ending of the case 관 [ran] or 이란[iran]
   - the auxiliary ending 는[nun]/ㄴ[n] or 은[un]

   For example:
   
   1. 아버지 까서* 오신다. (Father comes.)
   [aboji ggeso osinda] father comes

   * explanation:
   * 아버지 + 까서 (아버지 - noun 까서 - nominative ending)
   The subject 아버지께서 is expressed by attaching the nominative ending 까서 to the noun 아버지.

   2. 제가* 가겠습니다. (I will go.)
   [chege kagetsumnida] I will go

   * explanation:
   * 제 + 가 (제 - pronoun 가 - nominative ending)
   The subject 제가 is expressed by attaching the nominative ending 가 to the pronoun 제.

   3. 지구란* 태양계의
   [chiguran taeyang-gyeui] the earth the solar system of
   [han han] a planet is

   The earth is one of the planets of the solar system.
* 지구 + 랄 (지구-noun 랄-ending which is used as the ending of the case)

The subject 지구랑 is expressed by attaching the ending 랄, which is used as the ending of the case, to the noun 지구.

오늘의 날씨는 어떻게니가? What's the weather like today of the weather how is?

* 날씨 + 는 (날씨-noun 는-auxiliary ending)

The subject 날씨는 is expressed by attaching the auxiliary ending 는 to the noun 날씨.

2. The locative ending 에서[esо] is also used for the subject when a collective object is expressed.

for example:

이 해에도 우리 농장에서
[i haeedo uri nongjang-eso this year in also our farm in
많은 날씨를 생산했다.
manun namsaerul saengsan haetda] much vegetable produced

Our farm produced a lot of vegetables this year, too.

3. A word without ending becomes the subject.
Such a subject is often used in poems or scenarios.

for example:

저 노래*1 우리에게는*2
[cho norae uriegenun that song us to
That song will give courage to us but fear to the enemy.
The noun 노래 is used as a subject without ending.
The noun 노래 is in absolute case.

* 우리 + 에게 + 는 (우리—personal pronoun 에게—
dative ending 는—auxiliary ending)

* 주 + 다 [chu da] give
stem ending
주 + 리라 (리라—middle declarative form of the final
ending of the verb)
리라 expresses surmise.

THE OBJECT

The object expresses the object which makes up the
action or state expressed by the predicate.

The object implies such a content as answers the fol-
lowing question:
whom? what? to whom? to what? by whom? in
what? with what? or (more) than who? (more) than
what?

for example:

○ (whom?)

 나는 매일 그를 * 만난다. | I meet him
[nanun maeil kurul mannanda] everyday.
I everyday him meet

explanation:

* The object 그를 makes up the action which is expressed
by the predicate 만남다.

○ (what?)
저는 커피를 마십니다. I drink a cup of coffee.
explanation:
* The object 커피를 makes up the action which is expressed by the predicate 마십니다.

○ (to whom?)
그는 나에게 책을 주었다. He gave me this book.
explanation:
* The object 나에게 makes up the action which is expressed by the predicate 주었다.

○ (to what?)
나는 공장에 갔다. I go to the factory.
explanation:
* The object 공장에 makes up the action which is expressed by the predicate 갔다.

○ (by whom?)
나는 그에게서 강의를 받는다. I attend his lecture.
explanation:
* The object 그에게서 makes up the action which is expressed by the predicate 받는다.

○ (in what?)
저는 런던에서 삶니다. I live in London.
explanation:
* The object 런던에서 makes up the action which is expressed by the predicate 삶니다.
**explanation:**

* The object makes up the action which is expressed by the predicate.

○ (to whom?)

우리는 가장 행복한
[urinun kajang haengbokan we the happiest.

인민으로 되었다.
inminuro toeyotda] people became

**explanation:**

* The object makes up the action which is expressed by the predicate.

○ (with what?)

나는 톬로
[nanun toburo I a saw]
나무를 뼈다.
namurul penda] the wood cut

**explanation:**

* The object makes up the action which is expressed by the predicate.

○ [(more) than who?]

그는 나보다 크다.
[kunun naboda kuda] he I than big

**explanation:**

* The object makes up the state which is expressed by the predicate.

○ [(more) than what?]

이 집은 저
[i chibun cho this house that

This house is bigger than that one.
joboda* 크다.
icoboda kuda]  
house than big

explanation:
* The object 장 집보다 makes up the state which is expressed by the predicate 크다.

206 The object is usually expressed by the noun, pronoun, numeral or the substantive.
1. The object is expressed by attaching the ending of the case or the auxiliary ending to the word.

for example:

O 저는 차를*  
[chonun charul  
I tea  
줄겨 마실니다.  
chulgyo masimnida]  
for preference drink

explanation:
* The object 차를 is expressed by attaching the accusative ending 롤 to the noun 차.

O 저는 평양에서*  
[chonun pyongyang-eso  
I Pyongyang from  
런던까지*2 갑니다.  
london-ggaji kamnida]  
London to go

explanation:
*1 The object 평양에서 is expressed by attaching the locative ending 에서 to the noun 평양.  
*2 The object 런던까지 is expressed by attaching the auxiliary ending 가지 to the noun 런던.

2. The object is expressed without attaching any ending of the case to the word.
for example:

저는 사이다* 마실니다. | I drink a glass of lemonade.
[chonun saida masimnida] | lemonade.
I drink

explanation:
* The object 사이다 has no ending of the case.

3. The object is expressed by attaching to itself the word which is used as an auxiliary such as 위하여[wihayo] "for", 대하여[taehayo] "for", 의하여[uihayo] "through", 관하여[kwanhayo] "about" and 말미암아[malmiama] "because of".

for example:
조국을 위하여* 싸우자. | Let us fight for the fatherland!
[chogugul wihayo ssauja] | the fatherland!
the fatherland for let us fight!

explanation:
* The object 조국을 위하여 is expressed by attaching to the word 조국을 the word 위하여 which is used as an auxiliary.

THE QUOTATION

207 The quotation expresses the object or additional description which is introduced to give a concrete explanation of the predicate.

for example:

○ (who he is?)

그는 나에게 김동무가 | He said to me that
[kunun na.ege kimdongmuga] | Comrade Kim was a
he me to Kim comrade
축구선수라고* 말하였다. | football player.
chukgusonsurago malhayotda] | was said
football player

283
explanation:
* The quotation 김동무가 축구선수라고 expresses that comrade Kim was a football player.

〇 (what it is?)
그는 나에게 이것이 그의 [kunun na-ege igosi ku-ui] He said to me that this was his 
학교라고 말하였다. [hakgyorago malhayotda] school was said

explanation:
* The quotation 이것이 그의 학교라고 expresses that this was his school.

〇 (how man does?)
그는 열심히 공부하자고* [kunun yolsimi kongbuhajago] He was determined 
결심하였다. [kyolsimhayotda] determined to study hard.

explanation:
* The quotation 열심히 공부하자고 expresses to study hard.

208 The quotation is expressed as follows:

1. The quotation is expressed by -라고[=rago] (=ira라고[=irago]), -느냐고[=nunyago], -느가고[=ngago] and -다고[=daggo] which are formed by attaching the connecting ending 고[go] to the final form of the word.

for example:

그들은 금강산이 [kudurun kumgangsani] They admired Mt. Kumgang
태자연의 떼지양이 they Mt. Kumgang very much for
the great nature of it's supreme natural
beauty.
우동가는
uddumganun
the best being
아름다움이라고* 못내
arumdaumirago monnae
beauty is that very
감탄하였다.
kamtanhayotda] admired

explanation:

* The quotation 금강산이 대자연의 우동가는 아름다움이라고 is expressed by the connecting form —이라고.

2. The quotation is expressed by the final form of the word with such final endings as 다[da], 자[ja]and 느나[nunya].

for example: 그 아이는 아버지다* That child shouted:
[ku ainun abojida that child “father is”
소리쳤다.
sorichotda] shouted

explanation:

* The quotation 아버지다 is expressed by the final form with the final ending 다 of the verbal form of the noun 아버지.

3. The quotation is expressed by attaching 하고[hago] to the quoted word.

The quoted word is put in quotation marks.

for example: 나는 그에게 고맙습니다! I said to him:
[nanun kuege komapsumnida I him to “Thank you” “Thank you”.

285
THE ADVERBIAL MODIFIER

209 The adverbial modifier defines the grade or form of the action or state to be expressed by the predicate or adds the modality to the aforementioned content.

for example:

그는 엿리 갓는다.  He goes fast.
[kunun bballi konnunda] he  fast  goes

210 The adverbial modifier is usually expressed by the adverb or by a form of the adverbial modifier of the verb or adjective.

I. The adverbial modifier form of the verb or adjective becomes the adverbial modifier.

for example:

그는 밤이 깊도록*  He studies till late at night.
[kunun pami kipdorok] he the night deep till
공부한다.  studies
kongbuhanda

explanation:

* 깊 + 다  [kip da] deep
stem ending

2. The adverb or the noun used adverbially becomes the adverbial modifier.
1) All adverbs except the connecting adverb such as 및 [mit] “and” and 결 [kyom] “and concurrently” become the adverbial modifier.

   for example:
   그는 조선말을 아주* 잘한다.  He speaks very well
   [kunun chosonmarul aju chal handa]  in Korean.

   explanation:
   * The adverb 아주 becomes the adverbial modifier.

2) The noun used adverbially becomes the adverbial modifier without ending.

   for example:
   그는 나를 적극* 돕는다.  He actively helps me.
   [kunun narul chokgukjoguro]  helps
   tomnunda]

   explanation:
   * The noun 적극 used adverbially becomes the adverbial modifier.

3) The noun in the form -적[[-jok] with the instrumental ending 로[ro] or without ending becomes the adverbial modifier.

   for example:
   그는 나를 적극적으로* 돕는다.  He actively helps me.
   [kunun narul chokgukjoguro]  helps
   tomnunda]

   explanation:
3. The following become the adverbial modifier:

1) The incomplete nouns such as 채[chae] “just as it is”, 대로[taero] “as” and 족족[chokjok] “every time” are attached to the attributive form of the word and become the adverbial modifier.

For example:
우리는 것을 산채로* 잡았다. | We captured
우리 the bear alive captured

explanation:
* 살 + 다 [sal da] live
stem ending

사 + 라 + 채 + 로 [(라-attributive ending of the verb in its past tense 채-incomplete noun “just as it is” 로-instrumental ending) after disappearance of the sound 라 (refer to 196)]
산채로 (after contracting the syllable 사 and the sound 라)

2) The repeated connecting forms such as -나 -나[-na -na]
-든 -든[-dun -dun] and -거나 -거나[-gona -gona] become the adverbial modifier.

For example:
그가 가든 안가든*
[kuga kadun angadun he whether goes or not goes or
나는 간다.
nanun kanda] I go

explanation:
* 가 + 다 [ka da] go
stem ending

Not depending on it, whether he goes or not, I go.
THE ATTRIBUTE

211 The attribute comes before attributed words and defines their character or denomination or expresses their belonging.

for example:

우리 청년들은
[uri chongnyondurun
our youths
혁명하는 *
hyongmyonghanun
revolution making
세대이며
sedaeimyo
generation are and
투쟁하는 *1 세대이며
tujaenghanun sedaeimyo
fighting generation are and
전진하는 *3 세대이다.
chonjinhanun sedaeida]
marching forward generation are

explanation:

*1 혁명하 + 다 [hyongmyongha da] the revolution make

혁명하 + 는 (는 - attributive ending of the verb in its present tense)

*2 투쟁하 + 다 [tujaengha da] fight

투쟁하 + 는 (는 - attributive ending of the verb in its present tense)
The attribute is expressed as follows:

1. The attributive form of words becomes the attribute.
   1) The attributive form of the verb or adjective becomes the attribute.

   for example:
   그 때는 따뜻한* | It was a warm spring day.
   [ku ddaenun ddaaddutan that time warm
   보냘이었다.
pomnariyotda] a spring day was

   explanation:
   * 따뜻한 + 다 [ddaadduta da] warm
   stem ending
   따뜻한 + L (L - attributive ending of the adjective in its present tense)
   따뜻한 (after contracting the syllable 핍 and sound L)

2) The attributive form of some verbs which are used as an auxiliary becomes the attribute.

   for example:
   그는 자기 고향에 He talked about his own
   [kunun chagi kohyang-e native place.
   he own native place
   대한* 이야기를 하였다.
taehan iyagirul hayotda] about the story did

   explanation:
   대한 + 다 [taeha da] be confronted(verb which is used as an auxiliary)
대한 + 라 (라 - attributive ending of the verb in its past tense)
대한 (after contracting the syllable 하 and the sound 라)

2. All pre-nouns become attribute.

for example:

선생은 매* 학생의
[sonsaeng'un mae haksaeng-ui
the teacher each pupil of
이름을 불렀다.
irumul pullotda]
name called

explanation:

♦ 매 학생 + 의 (매 - pre-noun 학생 - noun 의 - genitive ending)
The pre-noun 매 is the attribute to the noun 학생.

3. The noun, pronoun, numeral or the substantive becomes the attribute.

1) Without ending

for example:

저것이 우리* 집이다.
[chogosi uri chibida]
that our house is

explanation:

♦ 우리 집 + 이 + 다 (우리 - personal pronoun 집 - noun 이 - exchanging ending 다 - low declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form)
The personal pronoun 우리 is the attribute to the noun 집.
The genitive ending 의 of the personal pronoun 우리, which is in the genitive, is omitted.

2) With the genitive ending

for example:

The teacher called the name of each pupil.

That is our house.
That is our house.

explanation:

* 우리 + 의 집 + 이 + 다 (우리 - personal pronoun, 의 - genitive ending, 집 - noun, 이 - exchanging ending, 다 - low declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form)

The personal pronoun in the genitive 우리 의 is the attribute to the noun 집.

4. The adverb becomes the attribute.

1) Without ending

for example:

| 봉봉* | 별소리 | a bee’s buzzing sound |
| pungbung | polsori |
| buzz bee | sound |

explanation:

* 봉봉 별소리 (봉봉 - adverb 별소리 - noun)

The adverb 봉봉 is the attribute to the noun 별소리.

2) With the genitive ending

for example:

| 스스로 의* | 가책 | One’s own reproach |
| susuroui | kachaek |
| one’s own reproach |

explanation:

* 스스로 + 의 가책 ( 스스로 - adverb 의 - genitive ending 가책 - noun)

The adverb 스스로 with the genitive ending 의 is the attribute to the noun 가책.

THE FORM OF ADDRESS

213 The form of address is the word with which the
speaker calls the person addressed.

for example:

조국편여, 영원히 번영하라! | Fatherland, prosper forever!
[chogugiyoyong-woni ponyonghara] forever prosper!

214 The form of address is expressed as follows:

1. A word with the vocative ending becomes the form of address.

for example:

전우들 이여*, 동지들에게 Comrades-in-arms!
[chonuduriyotongjidurege comrades-in-arms comrades to]
드겨운 전투적 인사들 warm militant greetings
보냅니다! send
ponaemnida]

explanation:

* 전우 + 들 + 이여 (전우 - noun 들 - plural ending
이여 - vocative ending)

2. A word without ending becomes the form of address.

for example:

김동무*! 잘 가해! Comrade Kim!
[kimdongmucharal kage] Good-bye!
Kimcomrade well go!

explanation:

* 김동무!
noun
The word 김동무 has no ending and becomes the form of address.

THE PARENTHESIS

215 The parenthesis is the part of sentence which is in-
asserted to express the source of the fact about which a person is talking or to give an additional explanation in the sentence.

For example:

들짓대* 김동무는
[tutgondae kimdongmunun
they say Kim comrade
최우등생이다.
choeudungsaeng-ida]
*a top student is

They say Comrade Kim is a top student.

Explanation:

* 들짓대 is the parenthesis.

The parenthesis is expressed as follows:

1. The connecting form of the word becomes parenthesis.

For example:

말하자면* 김동무는
[malhajamyon kimdongmunun
so to speak Kim comrade
최우등생이다.
choeudungsaeng-ida]
*a top student is

Comrade Kim is a top student, so to speak.

Explanation:

* 말하다 + 다 [malha da] speak

The connecting form 말하자면 of the verb 말하다 becomes the parenthesis.

2. Phrases become parenthesis.

For example:

보는바와 같이* 우리
[ponunbawa kachi uri
as see our
As you see, our football players won.
The exclamatory word expresses the thought or attitude of the speaker according to his feelings.

for example:

예*, 저도 가겠습니다.  
[ye chodo kagetsumnida]  
yes I also go will  

Yes, I will go, too.

explanation:
* The interjection 예 becomes the exclamatory word.

218 The exclamatory word is expressed as follows:

1. An interjection becomes an exclamatory word.

for example:

예*, 저도 갑니다.  
[ye chodo kamnida]  
yes I also go

Yes, I go, too.

explanation:
* The interjection 예 becomes the exclamatory word.

2. A non-interjection becomes an exclamatory word.

295
for example:

 wolso*, 자네가 wolso. | Right, you are right.
[also chanega also] right you right

explanation:

* 울 + 다 [ol ta] right
stem ending
울 + 소 (소-middle declarative form of the final ending of the adjective)
The final form 울소 of the adjective 울다 becomes the exclamationary word.

THE CONJUNCTIVE

219 The conjunctive is the part of a sentence which connects two contents to each other.

The conjunctive usually lies at the beginning of the sentence and connects the content of a sentence with the content of another sentence in which the conjunctive lies.

for example:

raeirun achim iljjigi tomorrow morning early
너나야 하오. 그러나까* 오늘
ddonaya hao kuronigga onul leave must therefore today
저녁에는 일찌기 자시오!
chonyogenun iljjigi chasio] evening in early sleep!

explanation:

* The conjunctive 그러나까 connects the content of a sentence with that of the sentence in which the conjunctive lies.
But in some cases the conjunctive performs the function of connecting two parts of a sentence to each other.

for example:

기적과 혁신은 공장에서, miracle and innovation in the factory in
농촌에서, the countryside in
그리고* 어촌에서 and the fishing village in

Miracles and innovations take place one after another in the factory, countryside, mine and fishing village.

explanation:
* The conjunctive 그리고 connects an object 공산에서 and another object 어촌에서 to each other.

220 The conjunctive is expressed as follows:

1. The adverb becomes the conjunctive.

for example:

이 공장에서는
[i kongjang · esonun this factory in

In this factory they produce both cars and buses.

explanation:
* The conjunctive 또한, which is an adverb, connects the content of a sentence with that of another sentence in
which the conjunctive lies.

2. A non-adverb becomes the conjunctive.

for example:

처음에 박동무가 [choume pakdongmuga first Pak comrade 연결하겠습니까. 다음으로*
yonsolhagetsumni taumuro speech make will next 김동무가 연결하겠습니까.
kimdongmuga yonsolhagetsumni] Kim comrade speech make will

explanation:

* The conjunctive 다음으로, which is a non-adverb, connects the content of a sentence with that of another sentence in which the conjunctive lies.

3. Phrases become the conjunctive.

for example:

그녀자는 노래를 [ku nyojanun noraeul she the song 잘 부른다. 그뿐 아니라*
chal purunda kubbunanira well sings besides 춤도 잘 춤다.
chumdo chal chunda] the dance also well dances

explanation:

* The conjunctive 그뿐 아니라 connects the content of a sentence with that of another sentence in which the conjunctive lies.

THE APPENDED MODIFIER

221 The appended modifier is the part of a sentence which
is presented for emphasis.

for example:

백두산, 그 이름은
Mt. Paekdu! The name will live forever in the hearts of all Koreans.

모든 조선 사람의
all Korean of

심장속에 영원히
the heart in forever

살아있을것이다.
live will

THE EXPANDED PART OF SENTENCE

222 The expanded part of a sentence consists of word combinations.

223 1. The expanded predicate

for example:

혁명의
revolution of

만경대는
Mangyongdaenun
Mangyongdae

매우 아름답다*
very beautiful

The scenery of Mangyongdae, the cradle of the revolution, is very beautiful.

explanation:

* 경치가 매우 아름답다. (경치—noun 가—nominative ending 매우—adverb 아름답다—final form of adjective)

경치가 매우 아름답다 is a word combination and the
expanded part of the sentence.
In the word combination 경치가 매우 아름답다 the final form 아름답다 of the adjective 아름답다 lies at the end of the sentence.
Therefore, the word combination 경치가 매우 아름답다 is an expanded predicate.

224 2. The expanded subject
This is similar to the complex subject in English.
for example:

| 조선말을 | 배우기가* | The Korean language is not difficult to learn. |
| [chosonmarul | paegiga | 
| the Korean language | to learn |
| 어렵지 않다. | oryopji anta] |
| difficult not |

explanation:
* 조선말을 + 을 배우다 [chosonmarul paeuda] the Korean language to learn (조선말 - noun 을 - accusative ending 배우다 - verb)
조선말을 배우기가 is a word combination and the expanded part of the sentence.
The word 배우기가, which comes at the end of the word combination 조선말을 배우기가, has the nominative ending 가.
Therefore, the word combination 조선말을 배우기가 is the expanded subject.

225 3. The expanded object
This is similar to complex object in English.
for example:

| 나는 | 그가 돌아오기를* | I waited for him to |
| [nanun | kuga toraogirul | come back. |
| I | he to come back |
He said to me that he would go back because he had to go home before supper.

explanation:
* 저녁식사전에 접에 가야 하므로 돌아가겠다고 is a word combination and the expanded part of the sentence. This expanded part of the sentence answers the question "how does a person?"
Therefore, this expanded part of the sentence is the expanded quotation.

227 5. The expanded adverbial modifier

for example:

강물이 눈이 | The river glitters dazzlingly.
[kangmuri nuni
the river water the eye
부시께* 번쩍거린다.
pusige ponjjokgorinda]
dazzlingly glitters

explanation:
* 눈 + 이 부시께 [nun i pusida] the eye dazzling
   (눈—noun 이—nominative ending 부시께—adjective)
눈이 부시 + 개(개—ending of the adverbial modifier)
눈이 부시께 is a word combination and the expanded part of the sentence.
The word 부시께, which comes at the end of the word combination 눈이 부시께, has the ending of the adverbial modifier 개.
Therefore, the word combination 눈이 부시께 is the expanded adverbial modifier.

228 6. The expanded attribute

for example:

나라와 인민의 | The noble character of
[narawa inminui
the country and the people of
재산을 아끼고 chaesanul aggigo
the property sparing
사랑하는* 고상한 품성 saranghanun kosanghan pumsong]
and loving noble character

explanation:
*사랑하 + 다 [sarangha da] love

stem ending

사랑하 + 는 (는—attributive ending of the verb in its present tense)

The word 사랑하는, which lies at the end of the word combination 나라와 인민의 제산을 아끼고 사랑하는, is the attributive form of the adjective 사랑하다.

Therefore, the word combination 나라와 인민의 제산을 아끼고 사랑하는 is the expanded attribute.

**LESSON 15**

**THE AGREEMENT OF PARTS OF SENTENCE**

The agreement of parts of sentence means that a part of sentence agrees with another part of sentence in an expression.

**for example:**

○ 선생님이 오십니다.* | The teacher is coming.

[sonsaengnim osimnida] the teacher comes

**explanation:**

* 오 + 다 [o da] come

stem ending

오+시+ㅂ니다 (시—ending of respect ㅂ니다—most deferential declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

오십니다(after contracting the syllable 시 and the sound ㅂ)

The ending of respect 시 lies in the predicate 오십니다 because the subject 선생님 is respected.

○ 선생님이 주무신다.* | The teacher sleeps.

[sonsaengnim chumusinda] the teacher sleeps
explanation:
* 주무시 + 다 [chumusi da] sleep (in the meaning of respect)
stem ending
주무시 + 냥다 (냥다—low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)
주무신다 (after contracting the syllable 시 and the sound 냥)
The predicate 주무신다 has the meaning of respect of “sleep”.
The predicate 주무신다 which has the meaning of respect of “sleep” is used in order to show respect to the subject 선생님.

There are agreement in the expressions of respect and courtesy as well as agreement in the expressions of the adverbial modifier, the question and the forms of address.

230 1. The agreement in expressions of respect and courtesy

1) The agreement in an expression of respect
When a respected person is the subject, the ending of respect 시 [si] is used in the predicate.

for example:
선생님 이 오신다. [sonsaengnimi osinda] the teacher comes
The teacher is coming.

explanation:
* 오 + 다 [o da] come
stem ending
오 + 시 + 냥다 (시—ending of respect 냥다—low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)
오신다 (after contracting the syllable 시 and the sound 냥)
The ending of respect 시 lies in the predicate 오신다 in order to show respect to the subject 선생님.

2) The agreement in an expression of courtesy
The agreement in an expression of courtesy is agreement in which the final ending in the final predicate is changed corresponding to the attitude of the speaker toward the person addressed.

(1) Agreement in the most deferential form
When the speaker respects the person addressed, the most deferential form of the final ending lies in the final predicate.

for example:
교장 선생님이 오십니다* The principal teacher
[kyojangsensaengnimiosimnida] is coming.
the principal teacher comes

explanation:
* 오 + 다 [o da] come
stem ending
오+시+ㅂ니다 (시—ending of respect ㅂ니다—most deferential declarative form of the final ending of the verb)
오십니다 (after contracting the syllable 시 and the sound ㅂ)

The most deferential form of the final ending ㅂ니다 lies in the final predicate 오십니다 in order to show respect to the person addressed.

(2) When the speaker and the person addressed are equals, the middle form of the final ending comes in the final predicate.

for example:
선생님이 오시오*. The teacher is coming.
[sonsensaengnimiosio] the teacher comes

explanation:
* 오 + 다 [o da] come
stem ending
오+시+오 (시—ending of respect 오—middle declarative
form of the final ending of the verb
The middle form of the final ending 오 lies in the final predicate 오시오 in order to express that the person addressed is on equal terms with the speaker.

(3) The agreement in the low form

When the person addressed is in a lower position to the speaker, the low form of the final ending lies in the final predicate.

for example:
어머니 오신다.* The mother is coming.
[omonim osinda]
the mother comes

explanation:
* 오 + 다 [o da] come
stem ending
오 +시 + 니다 (시−ending of respect 니다−low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)
오신다 (after contracting the syllable 시 and the sound 니다)

The low form of the final ending 니다 lies in the final predicate 오신다 in order to express that the person addressed is on a lower level than the speaker.

3) The agreement in words which have the meaning of respect

Korean has words which have the meaning of respect in themselves. Therefore, one must use such words when he speaks to a superior.

for example:
이 책을 아버님에게 돌려라!* Give this book to the father!
[i chaegul abonimege ollyor]
this book the father to give!

explanation:
* 돌리 + 다 [ollid a] give(in the meaning of respect).
stem ending
The imperative form of the final ending of the verb

The predicate 올리라 is used here in order to show respect to “father”.

231 2. The agreement in the adverbial modifier and other parts of the sentence

for example:
우리의 전쟁을 바라지 않지만
[urinun chonjaeng.ul paraji anchiman
we the war want not but]
결코 전쟁을 두려워하지 않는 다.*
kyolko chonjaeng.ul turyowohaji annunda]
never the war fear not

We don’t want the war, but never fear it.

explanation:
* 두려워하다 [turuyowoha da] fear
stem ending
두려워 + 지 않다 (지 − connecting ending of negation 없다
− verb which is used as an auxiliary)
두려워 + 지 않 + 는다 (는다 − low declarative form of the
final ending of the verb)
The low declarative form of the final ending of the verb

232 3. The agreement in interrogative words and other parts of the sentence

for example:
무슨 말을 그렇게
[musun marul kuroke so
which word so]
What an interesting story are you telling?
chemist's handwagon:

interestingly do?

explanation:

* 하 + 다 [ha da] do
stem ending

하 + 는가 (는가 – middle interrogative form of the final
ending of the verb)

The final predicate of interrogation하는가 is in agree¬
ment with the interrogative word 무엇, which lies at
the beginning.

233 4. The agreement in the forms of address and other
parts of the sentence

This is the agreement in which the final predicate
in the low form of courtesy follows after the forms
of address with the vocative ending 아[a]/ 어[ya].

for example:

너 백두 야!*!
[no paekduya
you Paekdu!
 조선의 산 야*!
chosonui sana
Korea of the mountain!
말 하 라*!
malhara
say!
어 뭔가 떨어졌던
oddoke ddorojyotdon
how fallen
태양이 이 나라에
taeyang-i i narae
sun this country in
다시 쏘 아 란 다!
tasi sosatdonya]
again went up!

You Paekdu!
The mountain of Korea!
Speak out!
How has the sun, which
had sunk, risen again
in this country?
THE ORDER OF PARTS OF SENTENCE

234 1. The position of the predicate
The predicate usually comes at the end of the sentence.

for example:

기차가 온다.*
[kichaga onda]
the train comes

explanation:

* 오 + 다 [o da] come
stem ending
오+나 (나－low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)
온다 (after contracting the syllable 오 and the sound 냥)
The predicate 온다 lies at the end of the sentence and closes the sentence.

235 2. The position of the subject
The subject usually comes at the beginning of the sentence.
So long as the speaker doesn’t emphasize a certain part of the sentence, the subject always comes first.

for example:

에스가 * 저기예 온다. A bus comes there.
[bbosuga chogie onda]
a bus that place to comes

explanation:

* 에스 + 가

noun nominative ending

The subject 에스가 lies at the beginning of the sentence.

236 3. The position of the object

The object often lies between the subject and the predicate.

for example:

O 그는 새로운 기계를* | He made a new machine.
[kunun saeroun kigyerul]
he new machine

만들었다.

mandurotda] made

explanation:

* 기계 + 른

noun accusative ending

The object 기계를 comes between the subject 그는 and the predicate 만들었다.

O 우리는 평화를* 원한다. We want peace!
[urinun pyonghwarul wonhanda]
we the peace want

explanation:

* 평화 + 른

noun accusative ending

The object 평화를 comes between the subject 우리는 and the predicate 원한다.
When a sentence has many objects, the object to which the action of the predicate of the transitive verb directly goes over always lies nearer to the predicate than other objects.

for example:

나는 그에게
[nanun kuege]
I him
그 책을 주었다.
ku chaegul chuotda]
that book gave

explanation:

* 그 책 + 을
pronoun noun accusative ending
The object which the action of the predicate directly influences comes nearer to the predicate than the object.

The expanded object comes before other objects.

for example:

나는 일을
[nanun irul]
I the work
끝냈다는 것을*
ggunnaetdanungosul
finished that
그에게 보고하였다.
kuege pogohayotda]
him reported

I reported to him that I had finished the work.

explanation:

* 끝내 + 다 [ggunnae da]finish
stem ending
끝내+었+다+는+것+을
(였-ending of the past tense
d다-low declarative form of the final ending of the verb
는- auxiliary ending 것-incomplete noun 을
-accusative ending)
The expanded object comes before another object.

The objects expressing time and place usually come at the beginning of the sentence.

When there are objects expressing time and place, the time comes first.

For example:

오늘 저녁에 [onul chonyoge today evening in]
구락부에서 [kurakbueso the club in]
모임이 있다. [moimi itda] a meeting is

Explanations:
- The object expressing time 오늘 저녁에 comes before the object expressing place 구락부에서.

237 4. The position of the quotation

The quotation usually comes between the object and the predicate.

For example:

전사는 자기 이름을 [chonsanun chagi irumul the soldier own name]
박철수라고 보고하였다. [pakcholsurago pogohayotda] Pak Chol Su as reported

Explanations:
- * 박철수 + 라 + 고 (박철수 - noun 라 - low declarative form of
the final ending of the verbal form 고-copulative connecting ending

The quotation 박철수라고 comes between the object 자기 이름을 and the predicate 보고하였다.

The expanded quotation comes before the object in order to avoid an ambiguity in meaning.

for example:
그는 저녁식사전에 집에 입었네 [kunun chonyoksiksajone chibe he supper before the house to 가 야 하므로 돌아가겠다고* kayahamuro toragagedago has to go as would go back that 나에게 말했다. naege malhaetda]
me to said

explanation:
* The expanded quotation 저녁식사전에 집에 가야 하므로 돌아 가겠다고 comes before the object 나에게 in order to avoid an ambiguity in meaning.

238 5. The position of the adverbial modifier
The adverbial modifier usually comes after the subject, object and quotation.

for example:
만경봉에 아침노을이 [mangyongbong.e achimnouri Mangyong Hill on the morning glow 아름답게* 비치였다. arumdapge pichiyotda] beautifully shone

explanation:
* 아름답게+다[arumdap da] beautiful stem ending 아름답게계 (재-ending of the adverbial modifier)
The adverbial modifier 아름답게 comes after the object 만경봉에 and the subject 아침노출이.


for example:
물론* 그도 옵니다. | Of course, he’s coming, too.
[mullon kudo omnida]

explanation:
*The modal adverbial modifier 물론 lies at the beginning of the sentence.

When two adverbial modifiers lie side by side before the predicate, the positions of the two adverbial modifiers are interchangeable.

for example:
〇 그는 말없이* 조용히 | He hurried up the work in silence.
[kunun maropsi choyong.i he without word still]

explanation:
* 말 + 없이
noun adverb

〇 그는 조용히 | He hurried up the work in silence.
[kunun choyong.i he still]
말없이 없이 없음
maropsi irul without word the work
4ii. taguchotda
hurried up

explanation:
The positions of the two adverbial modifiers 말없이 and 조용히 are interchangeable.
The adverbial modifier -적으로 [-joguro] usually comes before another adverbial modifier.

for example:
그는 부모에게 [kunun pumoege he the parents to 편지로 pyonjirul the letter 정상적으로* chongsangjoguro a regular way in 꼭 쓴다. ggok ssunda] surely writes

explanation:
*The adverbial modifier 정상적으로 comes before another adverbial modifier 꼭.

239 6. The position of the attribute

The attribute always comes before the part of sentence which it qualifies.

for example:
이 애가 저의*말입니다. [i aega choui ddarimnida] this child my daughter is

explanation:
*The attribute 저의 lies before the verbal form 말입니다 of the noun 말.
When two attributes lie side by side, their positions are in-
terchangeable in consideration of their syntactic relations to the part of sentence which lies after them.

for example:

○ 인 민 경 제*
  [inmin-gyongje]
  national economy of
모든 부문
all branch

explanation:
* The attribute 인민경제 is in the form of absolute case of genitive 인민경제의 of the noun 인민경제.

○ 모든
  [modun]
  all
인민경제 부문
  inmin-gyongje pumun
the national economy of
  the branch

explanation:
The positions of the attributes 인민경제 and 모든 are interchangeable.

When there are a verbal attribute and an adjectival attribute side by side, the verbal attribute comes before the adjectival attribute.

for example:

잠자리 는*1 귀여운*2 아기 | sleeping lovely baby
  [chamjanun kwiyoun aegi]
  sleeping lovely baby

explanation:
*1 잠자리 + 다[chamja da] sleep
  stem ending
special form of the verbal attribute.

The attribute 잠자는 comes before the adjectival attribute.

When an attribute in the form of the genitive of the noun, pronoun, numeral or the substantive goes side by side with an adjectival attribute, the attribute in the form of the genitive of the noun, pronoun, numeral or the substantive comes before the adjectival attribute.

For example:

당원의 ( 당원의 )
[ tong-wonui ]
the noble
dignity

고귀한 ( 고귀한 )
[ kogwiha ]
of a party member

noun genitive ending

stem ending

The attribute 당원의 in the form of the genitive of the noun 당원 comes before the adjectival attribute 고귀한.

When an adjectival attribute lies side by side with an attribute in the form of the absolute case of the personal pronoun, the adjectival attribute comes before the attribute in the form of the absolute case of the personal pronoun.

317
pronoun.
for example:

영광스러운
[yong.gwangsuroun
glorious
우리 조국
uri choguk]
our fatherland

explanation:

*1 영광스럽 + 다 [yong.gwangsurop da] glorious
stem ending
영광스러운 우리 [(-attributive ending of the adjective
in its present tense) after exchanging the sound 락 for
the syllable 우 (refer to 196)]
영광스러운 (after contracting the syllable 우 and the
sound 락)

*2 The attribute 우리 is in the form of the absolute case
of the genitive 우리의 of the personal pronoun 우리.
The adjectival attribute영광스러운 lies before the at-
ttribute 우리 in the form of the absolute case of the
genitive 우리의 of the personal pronoun 우리.
The expanded attribute comes before another attribute
in order to avoid an ambiguity in meaning.

for example:

라와 인 민의
[narawa inminui
the country and the people of
재산을 아끼고
chaesanul aggigo
the property sparing and
사랑하는 고 상한 품성
saranghanun kosanghan pumsong]
the noble character of
the country and people

explanation:

*1 사랑하다 [sarangha da] love
stem ending

318
attributive ending of the verb in its present tense)

*2 고양하 + 다 [kosangha da] noble stem ending

attributive ending of the adjective in its present tense)

(after contracting the syllable 하 and the sound 라)

The expanded attribute 나라와 인민의 재산을 아끼고 사랑하는 comes before another attribute 고양한.

7. The position of the form of address, exclamatory word, parenthesis, conjunctive or appended modifier

The form of address, exclamatory word, conjunctive or appended modifier usually comes at the beginning of the sentence.

for example:

어머니.* 아버지가Mother! Father is back.

[omoni abojiga
mother father
 돌아 오십니다.
toraosimnida] comes back

explanation:

* The form of address 어머니 lies at the beginning of the sentence.

The form of address or an exclamatory word comes also at the end of the sentence.

for example:

○ 아버지가 Father is back, mother!

[abojiga father
d 돌아 오십니다. 어머니*
toraosimnida omoni] comes back mother
explanation:
* The exclamatory word 어머니 comes at the end of the sentence.

우리 기어이 그대 품으로
we surely your bosom to
dol 아 가리라,
toragarira
go back will
어머니 조국 이여!
omonijogugiyol
mother fatherland!

explanation:
* 어머니 + 조국 + 이여
noun noun vocative ending

The form of address 어머니 조국 이여 comes at the end of the sentence.

When the conjunctive performs its function of connecting two parts of sentence, it comes between them.

for example:
너와 나 그리고* 그는
[nowa na kurigo kunun
you and I and he
함께 간다.
hamgge kanda]
together go

You and I as well as he go together.

explanation:
* The conjunctive 그리고 comes between the subject 나 and the subject 그.

LESSON 16
THE KINDS OF SENTENCES

241 Korean sentences are classified into five kinds ac-
according to the state of things and the viewpoint of the speaker — declarative, interrogative, suggestive, imperative and exclamatory.

242 1. The declarative sentence

A declarative sentence expresses some statement in the affirmative or negative form.

for example:

저는 대학생입니다.  I am a student.
[chonun taehaksaeng'imnida]  a student am

1) The declarative sentence contains the following contents of statement:

(1) Some phenomenon, result or fact:

for example:

어린 이들은 앞날의  The children are
[orinidurun amnarui  masters of the future.
the children the future of
주인 들이 다.  the masters are
chuindurida]

(2) Some work or action to be done obligatorily:

for example:

우리는  We must keep the
[urinun we  labour safety regulations.
로동안전규정을  the labour safety regulation
rodong.anjon.gyujong.ul 지켜야 한다.  must
chikyoya handa] keep

(3) The estimation of some fact:
for example:

너는 공부를 잘 하였다. 
You have studied well.
[nonun kongburul chal hayotda]
you the study well did

(4) The determination or intention of the speaker:
for example:

[raeil chonun yong.guguro]  
tomorrow I England to
돌아가겠습니까.
go back will

(5) The promise of the speaker to the person addressed:

for example:

[raeil tasi oma]  
tomorrow again come will

explanation:

* 오 + 다 [o da] come
stem ending
오+마(마—low declarative form of the final ending of
the verb)
The low declarative form of the final ending of the
verb 마 expresses the promise of an action foreseen in
the future.

(6) The affirmation or negation of some fact or the word of some person:

① When the interrogator is superior to the person addressed:

for example:

[ tongmunun kao]  
comrade go?
Are you going?
○ 너는 가니?
[nonun kani]
you go?

예, [ye] Yes.

explanation:
예 is the answer that one will go.

아니요, [aniyo] No.

explanation:
아니 + 요
(아니—adverb of negation 요—middle declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form)
아니요 is the answer that one will not go.

○ 동무는 안 가요*?
[tongmunun an·gao]
comrade not go?

explanation:
* 안 + 가다 [an·gada] not go
(안—adverb of negation 가다—verb)
안 + 가 + 요 (요—middle declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

○ 너는 안 갈니*?
[nonun an·gani]
you not go?

explanation:
* 안 + 가다
안 + 가 + 니 (니—low interrogative form of the final ending of the verb)
예, [ye] yes.

explanation:
예 is the answer that one will not go.
The answer 예 is the affirmation of "not go?".
In this case the answer in English would be "no".
애니요. [aniyo] No.

explanation:
애니요 is the answer that one will go.
The answer 애니요 is the negation of “not go?”
In this case the answer in English would be “yes”.

② When the interrogator and the person addressed are on an equal footing:

for example:

〇 (between friends)

동무는 가나?
[tongmunun kana] you go?

Are you going?

〇 (between children)

너는 가니?
[nonun kani] you go?

응. [ung] yes.

explanation:
응 is the answer of one who will go.

애니. [ani] No.

explanation:
애니 is the answer of one who will not go.

〇 (between friends)

동무는 안가나?
[tongmunun an.gana] you not go

Aren’t you going?

explanation:
* 안+가나 [an gada] not go
( 안−adverb of negation 가다−verb)
안 +가+나
(나−middle interrogative form of the final ending of the verb)
O (between children)

Aren't you going?

[nonun angani]
you not go?

explanation:

* 안+가+니 (니—low interrogative form of the final ending of the verb)

음[ung] Yes.

explanation:

는 is the answer of one who will not go.
The answer 는 is the affirmation of "not go? ".
In this case the answer in English would be "no".

아니. [a ni] No.

explanation:

아니 is the answer of one who will go.
The answer 아니 is the negation of "not go? ".
In this case the answer in English would be "yes".

3 When the interrogator is inferior to the person addressed:

for example:

O 당신 은 가 싶니 까? | Are you going?

[tangsinun kasimnigga]
you go?

O 아버 지 는 가 싶니 까? | Are you going, father?

[abojinun kasimnigga]
father goes?

음. [ung] Yes.

explanation:

는 is the answer of one who will go.

아니. [ani] No.
explanation:

아니 is the answer of one who will not go.

○ 당신은
[tangsinun you 안 가 싶 니가*? an. gasimnigga not go?]

explanation:

* 안 + 가다
안 + 가 + 시 + 비니가
(시 ending of respect 비니가 most deferential interrogative form of the final ending of the verb)
안가십니가 (after contracting the syllable 시 and the sound 비)

○ 아버지 는 안 가 싶니가?
[abojinun an. gasimnigga father does not go?]

응.[는] Yes.

explanation:

응 is the answer of one who will not go.
The answer 응 is the affirmation of “not go?”
In this case the answer in English would be “no”.

아니. [ani] No.

explanation:

아니 is the answer of one who will go.
The answer 아니 is the negation of “not go?”
In this case the answer in English would be “yes”.

(7) The declarative sentence only shows that there is a certain object.

for example:

군중의 물결,
[kunjung-ui mulgyol the masses of the wave]

the streams of the masses, the cheers of joy
The characteristics of the declarative sentence

The final predicate of the declarative sentence is usually expressed in the declarative form.

For example:

나는 조국으로 I go back to the
[nanun choguguro
I
I the fatherland to
dol a gan da.*
toraganda]
go back

Explanation:

- 돌아가 + 다 [toraga da] go back
  stem ending

- 돌아가 + 라 (라 - low declarative form of the final ending of the verb)

- 돌아간다 (after contracting the syllable 가 and the sound 라)

- 돌아간다 is the declarative form of the verb 돌아가다.

But in some cases the final predicate of the declarative sentence can be expressed in other forms.

For example:

처녀 8시부터 There is a meeting at
[chonyok yodolsibuto
evening 8 o'clock from
회의가 있음*
hoeuiga issum]
the meeting to be

Explanation:

- 있 + 다 [it da] be
  stem ending
The final predicate 음 음 is the substantive form of the verb 은.

243 2. The interrogative sentence

The interrogative sentence means that the speaker asks another person something.

for example:
언제 당신을 언제
[onje tangsinun
when you
조국으로
choguguro
the fatherland to
돌아가 십니까?
toragasimnigga]
return?

1) The interrogative sentences are classified as follows according to their function and contents:

(1) The interrogative sentence which requires an answer from the person addressed

① The affirmation of some fact:

for example:
당신을 통역원입니까?
[tangsinun tong.yogwon imnigga]
you an interpreter are?
예.
[ye]
yes

② The answer to a concrete fact:

for example:
몇시입니까?
[myotsiimnigga]
how much time is?
It is five o’clock.

(2) The interrogative sentence which doesn’t require an answer from the person addressed

1. It is required that the person addressed does some action.

for example:

Children! Why haven’t you gone to school yet?

explanation:

* 왜 + 들

adverb plural ending

The plural ending 들 is attached to the adverb 왜 in order to emphasize the plural of “children”.

The interrogative sentence has the instruction that the children should quickly go to school.

2. A strong affirmation or negation for some fact is expressed.

for example:

Can’t you go?

explanation:

* 가 + 다 [ka da] go
stem ending

g + 다 + 수 없다.

(가—attributive ending of the verb in its future tense 수—incomplete noun 없다—adjective)
A + A- + A (after contracting the syllable 가 and the sound 은)

말 + 이 + 나
(l - attributive ending of the adjective in its present tense 말 - noun which is used as an auxiliary

이 - exchanging ending 나 - low interrogative form

of the final ending of the verbal form)

말이나 is a strong affirmation of 말을.

2) The characteristics of the interrogative sentence

The final predicate of the interrogative sentence is usually expressed in the interrogative form.

for example:

당신은 영국 사람 임 니 까? [tansinun yong 'guksaramimnigga] Are you an English?
you an English are?

explanation:

* 영국 사람 + 이 + 니까

(이 - exchanging ending 니까 - most deferential interrogative form of the final ending of the verbal form)

영국 사람 임니까 (after contracting the syllable 이 and the sound 니)

영국 사람 임니까 is the interrogative form of the verbal form of the noun 영국 사람.

But in some cases the final predicate of the interrogative sentence can be expressed in other forms.

for example:

네가 나의 친구의 아들 이 라 니? [nega naui chin-gu-ui]
you my friend of son are as?

As you are the son of my friend, I am very glad.
explanation:

* 아들 +이 +라 +니
(아들 - noun 이 - exchanging ending 라 - low declarative form of the final ending of the verbal form 니 - connecting ending of cause)

The final predicate 아들이라니 is the connecting form of the verbal form of the noun 아들

244 3. The suggestive sentence

The suggestive sentence means that the speaker requires the person addressed to do some action together with him.

for example:

동무들 갑시다. | Comrades, let us go!
[tongmudul kapsida]
comrades let us go

1) The suggestive sentence contains the following:

(1) It is required to do some action together.

for example:

동무들 춤을 춤시다. | Comrades, let us dance!
[tongmudul chumul chupsida]
comrades a dance let us dance

(2) The person addressed is required to do some action.

for example:

박 동무 좀 | Comrade Pak, read a little slowly!
[pakdongmu chom
Pak comrade a little

331
Slowly let us read

(3) One’s own determination or one’s own aim is expressed.

For example:

가져가 되자! [kwahajgara toeja]
scientist let us become
이것이 나의 결정이였다. igosi naui kyolsimiyotda
it my determination was

To become a scientist!

It was my determination.

2) The characteristics of the suggestive sentence

The final predicate of the suggestive sentence is expressed in the suggestive form.

For example:

동무들, 노래 합시다.* [tongmudul noraesimapsida]
comrades let us sing

Explanation:

* 노래하다 [noraeha da] sing
stem ending
노래하다 [noraeha da]

(bhisda — most deferential suggestive form of the final ending of the verb)

노래합시다 (after contracting the syllable 하 and the sound ㅂ)

노래합시다 is the suggestive form of the verb 노래하다.

The suggestive sentence has its particular accent.

(1) The tone is even at the end of the sentence.

For example:

가져! [kaja]
let us go!

Let us go!
(2) The tone is even and short at the end of the sentence when a determination or aim is expressed.

For example:

동무 들, 혁명을 [tongmudul hyongmyong·ul comrades the revolution]
위하여 우리와 [uihayo uriwa for us with]
함께 싸울 시다. [hamgge ssaupsida] together let us fight
Comrades, let us fight together for the revolution!

(3) When high requirements are expressed, the tone is loud and strong at the end of the sentence.

For example:

○ 자주성을 옹호하자. [chajusong·ul onghohaja] Let us defend Chajusong!
○ 원쑤를 소멸하자. [wonsurul somyolhaja] Let us smash the enemy!
the enemy let us annihilate

(4) When a recommendation or the request is expressed, the tone is relatively low and soft at the end of the sentence.

For example:

여기에서 [yogieso this place in]
이 야기를 향자. [iyagirul haja] the talk let us do
Let us talk here!

245 4. The imperative sentence
The imperative sentence means that the speaker makes the person addressed do a certain action.

for example:
골 떠나시오.  
[kot ddonasio]  
at once leave!

1) The imperative sentence contains the following:
(1) An order, instruction, prohibition or appeal is expressed.

for example:
자 계.  
[chage]  
sleep!

explanation:
자 + 다 [cha da] sleep  
stem ending  
자 + 계  
(계−middle imperative form of the final ending of the verb)

(2) Congratulations, a wish or a hope is expressed.

for example:
안녕히 가십시오.  
[annyong-i kasipsio]  
well go!

(3) A request, recommendation or permission is expressed.

for example:
그렇게 하시오.  
[kuroke hasio]  
so do!
2) The characteristics of the imperative sentence

The final predicate of the imperative sentence is usually expressed in the imperative form.

for example:

별리 가라.*
[bballi kara]  
quickly go!

Go quickly!

explanation:

* 가 + 다 [ka da] go

stem ending

가 + 라 (라—low imperative form of the final ending of the verb)

가라 is the imperative form of the verb 가다.

But in some cases the final predicate of the imperative sentence can be expressed in other forms.

(1) In the form of 음것 [lgot]

for example:

모두 모일것.*
[modu moilgot]  
all gather!

All should gather!

explanation:

* 모이 + 다 [moi da] gather

stem ending

모이 + 음 +것

(음—attributive ending of the verb in its future tense 음—incomplete noun)

모일것 (after contracting the syllable 음 and the sound 음)

The final predicate 모일것 is in the form of 음것.

(2) Without ending

for example:
Hurry up!

explanation:

* The final predicate 빨리 is without ending.

(3) In the form of the instrumental of the noun

for example:

Squad! Forward after me!

explanation:

* 앞 + 을 + 로

noun link-vowel instrumental ending

The final predicate 앞으로 is in the form of the instrumental of the noun 앞.

(4) By attaching ★ [s] to the connecting form of the verb ★ [a]/ ★ [o]/ ★ [yo]

for example:

Stop!

explanation:

서 + 다 [so da] stop

stem ending

서 + ★

 efter contracting the syllable 서 and the sound ★

The final predicate ★ is formed by attaching ★ to the connecting form 서 of the verb 서다.

246 5. The exclamatory sentence

The exclamatory sentence expresses some kind of emo-
tion or feeling.

for example:
오, 조국의 바다여! Oh, the sea of the
[o chogugui padayo] fatherland!
oh the fatherland of the sea

1) The exclamatory sentence contains the following:
   (1) An emotion is expressed differently.

for example:
아, 동해가 보인다! Ah, we see the East
[a tonghaega poinda] Sea!
ah the East Sea is seen!

The sentence which contains 만세[manse] “hurrah” also belongs to the exclamatory sentence.

for example:
Hurrah!
〇 만세! [manse]
hurrah!
〇 조선민주주의인민
[choson-minjuui-inmin]
the Democratic People’s
공화국 만세!
gonghwaguk manse]
Republic of Korea long live!

(2) Feelings such as respect, pride, congratulations, conviction and determination are expressed.

for example:
우리의 평양은
[uriui pyongyang·un our Pyongyang
참으로 공장 하나나*
chamuro unbijanghaguna] truly magnificent!

Our Pyongyang is truly magnificent.
explanation:
* 운장하+다 [ungjangha da] magnificent stem ending
운장하+구나
(구나-low declarative form of the final ending of the adjective)
2) The characteristics of the exclamatory sentence
The exclamatory sentence has the emotional accent.

for example:
동무들! 백두산이
[tongmudul paekdusani comrades! Mt. Paekdu
보입니다! poimnidal is in sight!
Comrades! Here is Mt. Paekdu!

In many cases the exclamatory word is in the exclamatory sentence, too.

for example:
오. 조국이여!
[o chogugiyo oh fatherland!
영원히 번영하여라*!
yong-woni ponyonghayora forever prosper!
Oh, fatherland! Prosper forever!

explanation:
* 번영하+다 [ponyongha da] prosper stem ending
번영하+여라
(여라-low imperative form of the final ending of the verb)
247 Sentences are classified into simple, compound and complex sentences according to the structure.

THE SIMPLE SENTENCE

248 The simple sentence has only one declarative unit.

for example:

저는 기사입니다.  I am an engineer.
[chonun kisaimnida]
I an engineer am

explanation:
There is only one declarative unit in the sentence 저는 기사입니다.

The simple sentences are classified as follows:

1. The common simple sentence
   The common simple sentence consists of the parts of sentence in agreement.

for example:

우리 농 평양으로
[urinun pyongyang'uro
we Pyongyango to
감니다.
[kamnida]
go

explanation:
우리 는, 평양으로 and 갑니다 are the parts of sentence in agreement.

2. The one-member sentence
The one-member sentence consists of one word.

for example:

당신은 갑니까?
[tangsinun kamnigga]
you go?
예.
[ye]
yes

explanation:
예 is the one-member sentence.

3. The sentence of denomination
This is a sentence in which the object, the phenomenon or state is denominated and affirmed.

for example:

○ 조선로동당
[chosonrodongdang] the Workers’ Party of Korea
○ 제 13 차 세계 청년 학생 촉진
[chesipsamcha-segye-chongnyonhaksaeng-chukjon] the 13th World Festival of Youth and Students

4. The elliptical sentence

for example:

우리는 래일
[urinun raeil] “we"
밤차로 평양으로...
pamcharo pyongyang-uro night train by Pyongyang to...

"... to Pyongyang by night train tomorrow."

THE COMPOUND SENTENCE
AND COMPLEX SENTENCE

249 The compound sentence and complex sentence have two
or more declarative units in the sentence.

1. The compound sentence
The compound sentence consists of two or more co-ordinated simple sentences.

for example:

그는 어제 도착하고 | He arrived yesterday, and I arrived today.
[ kunun oje tochakago he yesterday arrived and
저는 오늘 도착했습니다. |  I today arrived.
[ chonun onul tochakaetsumnida ]

explanation:
The declarative units, 그는 어제 도착하고 and 저는 오늘 도착했습니다. in the sentence 그는 어제 도착하고 저는 오늘 도착했습니다. are connected to each other by the copulative connecting ending 고. But they have the same qualification.

2. The complex sentence
The complex sentence consists of a main declarative unit and one or more subordinate declarative units.

for example:

값일 날씨가 | If the weather is
[ raeil nalssiga tomorrow the weather
좋으면 나는 떠나겠다. | I will leave.
[ choumyon nanun ddonagetda ]

good when I leave will

explanation:
The declarative units, 값일 날씨가 좋으면 and 나는 떠나겠다. in the sentence 값일 날씨가 좋으면 나는 떠나겠다 are connected to each other by the connecting ending 면.
THE ORDER OF THE PRINCIPAL CLAUSE
AND THE SUBORDINATE CLAUSE

250 In Korean the subordinate clause always lies before the principal clause.

for example:

[raeil] nalssiga choumyon tomorrow the weather good when
우리는 떠나겠습니까.
we leave will

explanation:
The subordinate clause 래일 날씨가 좋으면 lies before the principal clause 우리는 떠나겠습니다 in the sentence 래일 날씨가 좋으면 우리는 떠나겠습니다.

DIRECT SPEECH

251 Direct speech conveys the original speaker’s exact words.

for example:

《가자!》 고*그는 말 하였다. He said: “Let us go!”
[kaja ko kunun malhayotda]
“let us go!” he said

explanation:
*고 is the copulative connecting ending.
The original speaker’s words in direct speech are connected to the principal clause as follows:

1. The endings such as 고 [ko], 라고 [rago] and 라 [ra] come after the original speaker’s words.
for example:

《가자！》고 그는 말하였다. | He said:
[kaja ko kunun malhayotda] “Let us go!”
“let us go!” he said

2. The word such as 하고[hago] and 이렇게[iroke] “so” comes after the original speaker’s words.

for example:

《가자！》그는 | He said:
[kaja kunun “let us go!” he
“let us go!” he
이렇게 말하였다. iroke malhayotda] so said

3. The original speaker’s words are connected to the principal clause without any means.

for example:

《가자！》그는 말하였다. | He said:
[kaja kunun malhayotda] “Let us go!”
“let us go!” he said

THE ORDER OF THE ORIGINAL SPEAKER’S WORDS IN DIRECT SPEECH

252 The original speaker’s words can lie before the principal clause, in the middle of the principal clause or after the principal clause.

1. The original speaker’s words come before the principal clause.

for example:

《너는 어디에 가니？》 | He asked me:
[nonun odie kani you which place to go? | “Where are you going?”

343
2. The original speaker’s words come in the middle of the principal clause.

For example:

The original speaker’s words come in the middle of the principal clause.

for example:

그는 나에게 물었다.
rago kunun na-ege murotda] he me to asked

explanation:

The original speaker’s words come in the middle of the principal clause.

He asked me: “Where are you going?”

3. The original speaker’s words lie after the principal clause.

For example:

He asked me:

“Where are you going?”

explanation:

The original speaker’s words lie after the principal clause.

The original speaker’s words lie after the principal clause.

344
after the principal clause 그는 나에게 물었다.

INDIRECT SPEECH

253 Indirect speech reports in one’s own words what somebody has said.

for example:

그는 오겠다고 말하였다. [kunun ogetdago malhayotda] he come would that said

He said that he would come.

explanation:

* 오 + 다 [o da] come
  stem ending
* 오 + 겠 + 다 + 고
  (следующий future tense 다 - low declarative
  form of the final ending of the verb 고 - copulative
  connecting ending)

THE CHANGING OF DIRECT SPEECH INTO INDIRECT SPEECH

254 Direct speech is changed into indirect speech according to the following rules:

1. Person, time, place and direction of the direct speech are changed in conformity with the reporter’s point of view.

for example:

○ Direct speech
  그는 ‘저도*1 레일*2’ [kunun chodo raeil]
  he ‘I also tomorrow’

  He said: “I will also go to the library tomorrow.”
He said that he would also come to the library the next day.

explanation:

*1 저도 in direct speech is changed into 자기도 in indirect speech.

*2 레일 in direct speech is changed into 다음날 in indirect speech.

*3 가겠습니다 indirect speech is changed into 오겠습니다 in indirect speech.

2. The different forms of courtesy in direct speech are changed into the low form of courtesy in indirect speech.

for example:

○ Direct speech

He said: “I will also go to the library tomorrow.”

○ Indirect speech

He said that he would also come to the library the next day.

He said: “I will also go to the library tomorrow.”
He said that he would also come to the library the next day.

**Explanation:**

* 가젯씀니다 in direct speech is the most deferential form of courtesy. 오겠습니다 in indirect speech is the low form of courtesy.

3. The forms of address, exclamatory words and some other expressions in direct speech are changed into other expressions.

**For example:**

**Direct speech**

He said: "Ah, how beautiful our fatherland is!"

**Indirect speech**

He said that he would also come to the library the next day.
Indirect speech

He said that our fatherland was truly beautiful.

Explanation:

* The exclamatory word 아 in the direct speech is changed into the adverbial modifier 참으로 in the indirect speech.

For example:

Direct speech

He asked: “Comrade Pak, is the meeting over?”

Indirect speech

He asked Comrade Pak whether the meeting was over.

Explanation:

* 박동무 in direct speech is changed into 박동무에게 in indirect speech.
4. The original speaker’s words in more than one sentence in direct speech are changed into one quotation in indirect speech.

for example:

○ Direct speech

He said:

“It is late. Hurry up!”

He said that I had to hurry up as it was late.

○ Indirect speech

for example:

He said:

“It’s raining.”

for example:

5. The quotation marks in direct speech are omitted in indirect speech. The quotation marks in direct speech are omitted in indirect speech. The quotation marks in direct speech are omitted in indirect speech.
○ Indirect speech

He said that it was raining.

malhayotda] said

explanation:
The quotation marks in direct speech are omitted in indirect speech.
The word 이렇게 in direct speech is omitted in indirect speech.

TABLES OF ENDINGS

TABLE OF THE ENDINGS OF THE CASE OF THE NOUN

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>number of the word to be declined</th>
<th>singular</th>
<th>plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nominative</td>
<td>깨서 [ggeso], 가 [ga]/이 [i]</td>
<td>깨서 [ggeso], 이 [i]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accusative</td>
<td>루 [rul] (을) [ul]</td>
<td>을 [ul]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genitive</td>
<td>의 [ui]</td>
<td>의 [ui]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dative</td>
<td>깨 [gge], 에게 [ege], 에 [e]</td>
<td>깨 [gge], 에게 [ege], 에 [e]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>number of the word to be declined case</td>
<td>singular</td>
<td>plural</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>--------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nominative</td>
<td>가[ga]</td>
<td>가[ga]/아[i]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accusative</td>
<td>룬<a href="%E3%84%B9">rul</a>[l]</td>
<td>룬<a href="%E3%84%B9">rul</a>[l]/ 룬[uil]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genitive</td>
<td>의[ui]</td>
<td>의[ui]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dative</td>
<td>에게[ege]</td>
<td>에게[ege]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>locative</td>
<td>에게서[egeso]</td>
<td>에게서[egeso]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instrumental</td>
<td>로[ro]</td>
<td>로[ro]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coordinative case</td>
<td>와[wa]</td>
<td>와[wa]/과[gwa]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocative</td>
<td>여[yo]</td>
<td>여[yo]/여이[yo]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### TABLE OF THE ENDINGS OF THE CASE OF THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN WHICH INDICATES PLACE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>number of the word to be declined</th>
<th>singular</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nominative</td>
<td>가[ga]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accusative</td>
<td>르[rul] (ㄹ[l])</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genitive</td>
<td>의[ui]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dative</td>
<td>에[e]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>locative</td>
<td>에서[eso]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instrumental</td>
<td>로[ro]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coordinative case</td>
<td>와[wa]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocative</td>
<td>여[yo], 야[ya]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### TABLE OF THE ENDINGS WHICH ARE USED AS CASE ENDINGS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>case</th>
<th>ending which is used as the case ending</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nominative</td>
<td>란[ran]/ 이란[iran]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dative</td>
<td>더리[doro], 한데[hante]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coordinative case</td>
<td>랑[rang]/ 이랑[irang], 하고[hago]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>others</td>
<td>보다[boda], 처럼[chorom], 마냥[manyang], 마다[mada]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Table of the Declarative Final Endings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Courtesy for</th>
<th>The Most Deferential Form</th>
<th>Middle Form of Courtesy</th>
<th>Low Form of Courtesy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>the verb, the adjective and the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral</td>
<td>1) 습니다 [sum nida] / 니디 [mnida]</td>
<td>1) 오 [o] / 소 [so]</td>
<td>1) 다 [da], 단다 [danda]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2) 담니다</td>
<td></td>
<td>2) 다오 [dao]</td>
<td>2) 도다 [doda], 아라 [ara]/ 어라 [ora]/ 여라 [yora]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3) 습니다 [sup tida] / 빅디 [ptida]</td>
<td></td>
<td>3) 네 [ne], 다네 [dane]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4) 담니다</td>
<td></td>
<td>4) 데 [de], 습데 [supde] / 빅데 [pte]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5) 아요 [ayo] / 어요 [oyo] / 여요 [yoyo]</td>
<td></td>
<td>5) 군 [gun], 구려 [guryo], 구만 [guman], 더군 [dogun], 더구만 [doguman]</td>
<td>3) 구나 [guna], 더구나 [doguna]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6) 지 [ji]</td>
<td></td>
<td>6) 지임 [jim]</td>
<td>4) 노라 [nora], 더라 [dora]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8) 는걸 [nun-gol], 면걸 [don-gol], 근걸 [likol]</td>
<td></td>
<td>8) 는걸 [nun-gol], 면걸 [don-gol], 근걸 [likol]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9) 는데 [nunde], 면데 [donde],</td>
<td></td>
<td>9) 는데 [nunde], 면데 [donde]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10) 더니 [doni], 더러니 [dora ni],</td>
<td></td>
<td>10) 더니 [doni], 더러니 [dora ni],</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the adjective and the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral</td>
<td>더러니까 [doranigga] 11) 거던 [godon] 12) 리 [ri], 라리 [rira], 리다 [rida] 13) 다구야 [daguya]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1) HUD</td>
<td>1) L 걸 [n-gol]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2) UC</td>
<td>2) L 들 [nde]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3) 012 [yayo]</td>
<td>1) 수만 [numan] 2) 르게 [lge], 렴레 [llae] 3) 마 [ma]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the verb</td>
<td>르시고 [lsigo]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the adjective</td>
<td>1) 람니다 [ramnida] 2) 람디다 [raptida] 3) 야요 [yayo]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral</td>
<td>1) 요 [yo] 2) 라오 [rao] 3) 라네 [rane] 4) 로균 [rogun], 로구만 [roguman] 5) 야 [ya] 6) 라구야 [raguya] 1) 라 [ra], 란다 [randa] 2) 로다 [roda] 3) 로구나 [roguna]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Courtesy for</td>
<td>The verb, the adjective and the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral</td>
<td>The most deferential form</td>
<td>Middle form of courtesy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The verb, the adjective and the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral</td>
<td>the verb, the adjective and the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral</td>
<td>1) 슨니까 [sum nigga] / 니니까 [mnikiga]</td>
<td>1) 나 [na]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2) 탑니까 [damnigga]</td>
<td>2) 느가 [nun·ga], 둔가 [don·ga], 린가 [lga]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3) 슨디까 [suptigga] / 니디까 [pntigga]</td>
<td>3) 다지 [daji]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4) 탑디까 [daptigga]</td>
<td>4) 느지 [nunji], 둔지 [donji], 린지 [lji], 린느지 [lunjii]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>5) 리까 [rigga]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The adjective and the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral</td>
<td>The adjective and the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral</td>
<td>1) 런가 [n·ga] 2) 런지 [nji]</td>
<td>런 [nya]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral</td>
<td>The verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral</td>
<td>래니까 [ramnigga], 래디까 [raptigga]</td>
<td>런지 [raji]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### TABLE OF THE SUGGESTIVE FINAL ENDINGS OF THE VERB

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>the most deferential form</th>
<th>middle form of courtesy</th>
<th>low form of courtesy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1) 볼시다[psida]</td>
<td>1) 셰[se]</td>
<td>1) 자[ja]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2) 자구요[jaguyo], 자요[jayo]</td>
<td>2) 볼채[pse]</td>
<td>2) 자꾸나[jagguna]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### TABLE OF THE IMPERATIVE FINAL ENDINGS OF THE VERB

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>the most deferential form</th>
<th>middle form of courtesy</th>
<th>low form of courtesy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1) 십시오[si-sio], 세요[seyo]</td>
<td>1) 시오[sio]</td>
<td>1) 라[ra]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2) 라구요[raguyo], 라요[rayo]</td>
<td>2) 게[ge]</td>
<td>2) 아라[ara]/어라[ora]/여라[yora]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3) 구려[guryo], 라구[ragu]</td>
<td>3) 럼무나[ryomuna]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4) 럼[ryom], 럼아[ryoma]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### TABLE OF THE CONNECTING ENDINGS OF THE VERB, ADJECTIVE OR VERBAL FORM OF THE NOUN, PRONOUN OR NUMERAL

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>classification</th>
<th>connecting ending</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>coordinative</td>
<td>(1) 고[go]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(2) 며[myo],면서[myonso]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(3) 럼뿐더러[llbundore]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(4) 거니와[goniwa], 럼니와[ryoniwa]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(1) 나[na], 되[doe]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(3) 농데[nde], 늘데[nunde], 면데[donde]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adversative</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(1) 나[na], 전[gon], 돼[dun]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disjunctive</td>
<td>(3) 거니[goni], 라[lla]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subordinative</td>
<td>(1) 면[myon], 거든[godun], 느리면[nuramyon], 더라면[doramyon], 라리면[llamyon], 자면[jamyon]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(2) 아드[ado]/어도[odo]/어도[yodo], 더라도[dorado]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>condition</td>
<td>(3) 르 망징[lmangjong], 르 지연정[ljionjong], 르 지라도[ljirado]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(4) 기로[giro], 기로서니[girosoni]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(5) 르들[ndul], 면들[dondul]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(6) 나마[nama]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(7) 아야[aya]/어야[oya]/여야[yoya]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cause</td>
<td>(1) 므로[muro]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| order | (1) 다[da], 다가[daga]  
|       | (2) 자[ja]  
|       | (3) 고서[goso]  
| method or means | 아[a]/어[o]/여[yo]  
| purpose or intention | (1) 려[ryo], 려고[ryogo], 자고[jago], 고저[gojo], 느라고[nurago]  
|                     | (2) 려[ro]  
| negation | 지[ji]  

**TABLE OF THE ATTRIBUTIVE ENDINGS OF THE VERB**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>attributive ending of the verb</th>
<th>tense</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>는[nun]</td>
<td>present</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>느[n]</td>
<td>past</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>묶[don]</td>
<td>past continuous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>뿐[l]</td>
<td>future</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### TABLE OF THE ATTRIBUTIVE ENDINGS OF THE ADJECTIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>attributive ending of the adjective</th>
<th>tense</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>냥[n]</td>
<td>present</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>며[don]</td>
<td>past continuous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>돈[l]</td>
<td>future</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### TABLE OF THE ATTRIBUTIVE ENDINGS OF THE VERBAL FORM OF THE NOUN, PRONOUN OR NUMERAL

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>attributive ending of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral</th>
<th>tense</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>냥[n]</td>
<td>present</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>며[don]</td>
<td>past continuous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>돈[l]</td>
<td>future</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### TABLE OF THE ENDINGS OF THE ADVERBIAL MODIFIER OF THE VERB OR ADJECTIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ending of the adverbial modifier of the verb or adjective</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. 계[ge], 도록[dorok]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. 독[dut], 독이[dusi]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. 돈수록[1surok]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

359
### TABLE OF THE TENSE ENDINGS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>tense name</th>
<th>present</th>
<th>past</th>
<th>future</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tense ending</td>
<td>zero ending</td>
<td>잇[at], 잕[ot], 잎[jot]</td>
<td>잕[get]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### TABLE OF THE ENDING OF RESPECT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ending of respect</th>
<th>시[si]</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

### TABLE OF THE ENDINGS OF THE VOICE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ending of the voice</th>
<th>passive form</th>
<th>causative form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0[i], 히[hi], 기[gi], 리[ri], 기우[giu], 히우[hiu], 리우[riu], 이우[iu]</td>
<td>0[i], 히[hi], 기[gi], 리[ri], 구[gu], 추[chu], 우[u], 기우[giu], 히우[hiu], 리우[riu], 이우[iu], 윤키[uki], 이키[iki]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### TABLE OF THE EXCHANGING ENDINGS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>exchanging ending</th>
<th>verbal form</th>
<th>substantive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0[i]</td>
<td>□[m], 기[gi]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meaning</td>
<td>auxiliary ending</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relation of inclusion</td>
<td>도[do] also,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>마저[majo] also,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>조차[jocha] also</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relation of restriction</td>
<td>만[man] only</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relation of limitation</td>
<td>부터[buto] from,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>까지[ggaji] till</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relation of indication</td>
<td>는<a href="%E3%84%B4%5Bn%5D">nun</a>/은[un]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relation of emphasis</td>
<td>야[ya]/이야[iya]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relation of concession</td>
<td>나[na]/이나[ina],</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>나마[nama]/이나마[inama],</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>라도[rado]/이라도[irado]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relation of negation</td>
<td>커녕[konyong]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
SUBJECT INDEX

The numerals indicate the paragraphs and others indicate the pages.

- absolute tenses 162 .................................................. 216
- accusative 18 ............................................................. 80
- active voice 175 .......................................................... 230
- adjective 76 ............................................................... 124
- adverb 126 ................................................................. 175
- adverbial modifier 209 ................................................... 286
- adversative connecting endings 131 .............................. 181
- agreement of parts of sentence 229 ............................... 303
- agreement in expressions of respect and courtesy 230 ......... 304
- agreement in the adverbial modifier and other parts of sentence 231 .......................................................... 307
- agreement in interrogative words and other parts of sentence 232 .......................................................... 307
- agreement in the forms of address and other parts of sentence 233 .......................................................... 308
- appended modifier 221 .................................................. 298
- attribute 211 ............................................................... 289
- attributive form of the verb 147 ..................................... 202
- attributive form of the adjective 149 .............................. 206
- attributive form of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral 151 .......................................................... 208
- auxiliary endings 185 .................................................. 242
- cardinal numbers 115 .................................................. 162
- causative form 177 ....................................................... 233
- change of sounds 12 ..................................................... 24
- changing of direct speech into indirect speech 254 ............... 345
• classification of the predicates 202 .................................. 269
• compound sentence and complex sentence 249 .................. 340
• conjunctive 219 ................................................................. 296
• connecting endings of condition 134 .............................. 184
• connecting endings of cause 135 ....................................... 186
• connecting endings of order 136 ....................................... 188
• connecting endings of method or means 137 ...................... 189
• connecting endings of purpose or intention 138 .................. 190
• connecting ending of negation 139 .................................... 191
• connecting form of the verb, adjective or verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral 128 ........ 178
• consonants 8 ................................................................... 16
• coordinative case 23 .......................................................... 85
• coordinative connecting endings 129 ................................. 178
• copulative connecting endings 130 .................................... 179
• counting words 117 ............................................................ 166
• courtesy 168 .................................................................... 223
• courtesy of the final ending of the verb 74 ............................ 122
• courtesy of the final ending of the adjective 81 ...................... 129
• courtesy of the final ending of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral 88 .................. 136
• dative 20 ......................................................................... 81
• declarative final endings to the verb 90 ............................... 137
• declarative final endings to the adjective 92 ......................... 141
• declarative final endings to the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral 94 .................. 143
• declarative sentence 242 .................................................... 321
• declension of a word to which a sense of respect is given 25 ......................................................... 87
• declension of a word which ends in a vowel .................................................. 87
• declension of a word which ends in a consonant ......................................... 88
• declension of a noun in the plural ................................................................. 89
• declension of a word in the plural to which a sense of respect is given ........... 90
• declension of a word in the plural which indicates an animate being .......... 90
• declension of a word in the plural which indicates an inanimate being .......... 91
• declension of the personal pronoun  .......................................................... 98
• declension of the personal pronoun 저[cho] “I” ............................................. 98
• declension of the personal pronoun 나[na] “I” .............................................. 99
• declension of the personal pronoun 저회[chohui] “we” ................................. 99
• declension of the personal pronoun 우리[uri] “we” ......................................... 100
• declension of the personal pronoun 너[no] “you” ............................................ 101
• declension of the personal pronoun 너희[nohui] “you” ................................... 102
• declension of the noun 당신[tangsin] “you” .................................................. 103
• declension of 그[ku] “he” ........................................................................... 104
• declension of 그녀자[ku nyojja] “she” ......................................................... 105
• declension of 그것[kugot] “it” ...................................................................... 105
• declension of 그들[kudul] “they” .................................................................. 105
• declension of 그녀자들[ku nyojadul] “they” ............................................... 106
• declension of 그것들[kugotdul] “they” 53 .......................... 106
• declension of the demonstrative pronoun which
  indicates an object isn’t 60 ................................. 111
• declension of the substantively used
demonstrative pronoun 그[ku] “he” 61 .......................... 112
• declension of 그들[kudul] “they” 62 ............................ 112
• declension of 이들[idul] “these men” 63 ........................ 113
• declension of the demonstrative pronoun which
  indicates the place 64 ................................. 113
• declension of the interrogative pronoun 101 ............ 151
• demonstrative pronoun 57 ................................. 109
• difference between the auxiliary endings and
  the case endings 186 ................................. 243
• diphtongs 5 ...................................... 13
• direct speech 251 .................................... 342
• disjunctive connecting endings 132 .......................... 183
• division of the demonstrative pronouns 58 ............ 110
• division of the verbal forms of the noun,
  pronoun or numeral 84 ................................. 132
• division of the pre-nouns 144 .............................. 201
• division of the auxiliary endings 187 .................... 244
• endings are attached one by one 192 .................... 254
• endings which are used as case endings 189 ........ 248
• exchange of sounds 196 ................................ 260
• exchanging ending 180 ................................ 237
• exchanging ending 오[i] 181 ......................... 237
• exchanging endings 오[m], 오[gi] 182 ............ 238
• exclamatory word 217 ................................ 295
• exclamatory sentence 246 ................................ 336
• expanded part of sentence 200 .......................... 268
• expanded part of sentence 222 .......................... 299
• expanded predicate 223 ................................ 299

365
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>224</td>
<td>expanded subject</td>
<td>300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>225</td>
<td>expanded object</td>
<td>300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>226</td>
<td>expanded quotation</td>
<td>301</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>227</td>
<td>expanded adverbial modifier</td>
<td>302</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>228</td>
<td>expanded attribute</td>
<td>302</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>178</td>
<td>expression of the voice in another way</td>
<td>234</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>206</td>
<td>expression of the object</td>
<td>282</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>208</td>
<td>expression of the quotation</td>
<td>284</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>210</td>
<td>expression of the adverbial modifier</td>
<td>286</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>212</td>
<td>expression of the attribute</td>
<td>290</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>214</td>
<td>expression of the form of address</td>
<td>293</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>216</td>
<td>expression of the parenthesis</td>
<td>294</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>218</td>
<td>expression of the exclamatory word</td>
<td>295</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>220</td>
<td>expression of the conjunctive</td>
<td>297</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72</td>
<td>final ending of the verb</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>79</td>
<td>final ending of the adjective</td>
<td>128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>86</td>
<td>final ending of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral</td>
<td>134</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>71</td>
<td>final form of the verb</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>78</td>
<td>final form of the adjective</td>
<td>127</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>85</td>
<td>final form of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral</td>
<td>133</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>213</td>
<td>form of address</td>
<td>292</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>153</td>
<td>form of the adverbial modifier of the verb or adjective</td>
<td>211</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>127</td>
<td>formation of the adverb from the adjective</td>
<td>177</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70</td>
<td>forms of the verb</td>
<td>117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>77</td>
<td>forms of the adjective</td>
<td>124</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>gender and article aren't</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>genitive</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54</td>
<td>genitive of the personal pronoun</td>
<td>107</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
• he, she, it, they 39 ...................................................... 97
• imperative final endings of the verb 121 .............. 172
• imperative sentence 245 ............................................. 333
• incomplete noun 118 ................................................... 168
• indirect speech 253 .................................................... 345
• infinitive 69 ............................................................... 117
• instrumental 22 .......................................................... 83
• interjection 146 .......................................................... 202
• interrogative final endings to the verb 102 .......... 151
• interrogative final endings to the adjective 104 .................................................. 153
• interrogative final endings to the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral 106 ................. 156
• interrogative pronoun 99 .............................................. 147
• interrogative sentence 243 ......................................... 328
• intonation of a sentence 13 .......................................... 31
• kinds of sentences 241 ................................................ 320
• Korean alphabet 2 ........................................................ 12
• Korean alphabet table 1 ............................................... 10
• link-vowels ə [i] and ə [u] 194 ...................................... 256
• locative 21 ................................................................. 82
• mood of the final ending of the verb 73 ................ 121
• mood of the final ending of the adjective 80 ........ 128
• mood of the final ending of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral 87 ................. 135
• nominative 17 ............................................................. 79
• numeral 114 ............................................................... 162
• object 205 ................................................................. 279
• order of the predicate 33 ............................................. 93
• order of the subject 34 ............................................... 93
• order of the genitive 35 .............................................. 94
• order of the object 36 .................................................. 94
• order of the genitive of the personal pronoun 56 .......................................................... 108
• order of the adjectively used demonstrative pronoun 66 ........................................ 115
• order of the attribute 67 .......................................................... 116
• order of the adverbial modifier 68 ........................................ 116
• order of the declarative final form of the verb in the sentence 96 .......................... 145
• order of the declarative final form of the adjective in the sentence 97 .......................... 146
• order of the declarative final form of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral in the sentence 98 .......................................................... 146
• order of the interrogative final form of the verb in the sentence 108 .......................... 158
• order of the interrogative final form of the adjective in the sentence 109 ....................... 159
• order of the interrogative final form of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral in the sentence 110 .......................................................... 159
• order of the form of address in the sentence 112 .......................................................... 161
• order of the interjection in the sentence 113 .......................................................... 161
• order of the suggestive final form of the verb in the sentence 123 .......................... 173
• order of the imperative final form of the verb in the sentence 124 .......................... 174
• order of the adjectival cardinal number 125 .......................................................... 174
• order of the connecting form of the verb, adjective or verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral 141 .......................................................... 194
• order of the attributive form of the verb 155 .......................................................... 213
- order of the attributive form of the adjective 156 ............................................. 213
- order of the attributive form of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral 157 ........ 214
- order of the form of the adverbial modifier of the verb or adjective 158 .......................... 214
- order of the pre-noun 159 ................................................................. 215
- order of the interjection in the sentence 160 ........................................ 215
- order of the ending of the tense 172 .................................................. 228
- order of the ending of respect 173 ................................................... 229
- order of the principal clause and the subordinate clause 250 .......................... 342
- order of the original speaker's words in direct speech 252 ........................................... 343
- ordinal numbers 116 ............................................................... 164
- pairs of endings 193 ................................................................. 254
- parenthesis 215 ................................................................. 293
- parts of sentence 197 ............................................................... 266
- passive voice 176 ............................................................... 231
- personal pronouns 37 ............................................................... 95
- plural of the noun 15 ............................................................... 78
- plural ending 16 ............................................................... 78
- position of the interrogative pronoun in the sentence 111 ........................................ 160
- position of the adverb 142 ........................................................... 194
- position of the predicate 234 ........................................................ 309
- position of the subject 235 ........................................................ 309
- position of the object 236 ........................................................ 310
- position of the quotation 237 ........................................................ 312
- position of the adverbial modifier 238 .................................................. 313
- position of the attribute 239 ........................................................ 315
- position of the form of address, exclamatory
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>word, parenthesis, conjunctive or appended modifier</td>
<td>319</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>predicate</td>
<td>269</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pre-noun</td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pronunciation of vowels</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pronunciation of consonants</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quotation</td>
<td>283</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relation between respect and courtesy</td>
<td>225</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relation in the meaning between the connecting predicate and the final predicate</td>
<td>273</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relative tenses</td>
<td>218</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>respect</td>
<td>223</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>simple vowels</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>simple part of sentence and expanded part of sentence</td>
<td>267</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>simple part of sentence</td>
<td>267</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>simple, compound and complex sentences</td>
<td>339</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>simple sentence</td>
<td>339</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stem and ending</td>
<td>251</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subdivision of the final endings of the verb</td>
<td>123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subdivision of the final endings of the adjective</td>
<td>130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subdivision of the final endings of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral</td>
<td>137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subject</td>
<td>276</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subordinative connecting endings</td>
<td>184</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suggestive final endings of the verb</td>
<td>170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suggestive sentence</td>
<td>331</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>syllables</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
• table of the endings of the case of the noun 32 ............................................................... 92
• table of the endings of the case of the personal pronoun 55 ........................................ 108
• table of the demonstrative pronouns 59 ................................................................. 111
• table of the endings of the case of the demonstrative pronoun which indicates place 65 .......... 115
• table of the declarative final endings of the verb 91 .................................................... 140
• table of the declarative final endings of the adjective 93 .............................................. 143
• table of the declarative final endings of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral 95 ................................................................. 145
• table of the interrogative pronouns 100 ................................................................. 150
• table of the interrogative final endings of the verb 103 .............................................. 153
• table of the interrogative final endings of the adjective 105 ........................................ 155
• table of the interrogative final endings of the verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral 107 ................................................................. 158
• table of the suggestive final endings of the verb 120 .................................................... 171
• table of the imperative final endings of the verb 122 .................................................... 173
• table of the connecting endings of the verb, adjective or verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral 140 .................................................... 192
• table of the attributive endings of the verb 148 ............................................................ 206
• table of the attributive endings of the
adjective 150 ................................................................. 208

• table of the attributive endings of the verbal
  form of the noun, pronoun or numeral 152 .......... 210

• table of the endings of the adverbial modifier
  of the verb or adjective 154 ..................................... 213

• table of the tense endings 166 .................................... 222

• table of the ending of respect 171 .............................. 228

• table of endings of the voice 179 ............................... 236

• table of the exchanging endings 184 ......................... 242

• table of auxiliary endings 188 ................................... 248

• table of the endings which are used as case
  endings 190 ............................................................ 251

• tenses 161 ..................................................................... 216

• tenses which are expressed by other methods
  165 ........................................................................... 221

• use of the pre-noun 145 ................................................ 201

• use of the exchanging endings 183 ............................. 240

• using tense endings 164 .............................................. 219

• verbal form of the noun, pronoun or numeral
  83 ............................................................................ 130

• vocal harmony 195 ..................................................... 258

• vocative 24 ............................................................... 85

• voice 174 .................................................................... 230

• vowels 3 ..................................................................... 13

• words which have the meaning of respect
  170 ........................................................................... 226

• writing of vowels 7 ..................................................... 16

• writing of consonants 10 ............................................ 22

• you 당신[tangsin] 38 .................................................. 97
ABBREVIATIONS:

- a adjective
- ad adverb
- ad fo adverbial form
- att fo attributive form
- aux end auxiliary ending
- causat v causative verb
- con fo connecting form
- dat dative
- end ending
- gen genitive
- imp fo imperative form
- incom n incomplete noun
- inst instrumental
- int interjection
- loc locative
- n noun
- num numeral
- pass passive
- pl plural
- pre-n pre-noun
- pron pronoun
- sg singular
- v verb
- vi intransitive verb
- vt transitive verb

KOREAN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

가극 [kaguk] n opera
가늘다 [kanulda] a thin
가능성 [kanungsong] n possibility
가다 [kada] vi go
가두배추 [kadubaechu] n cabbage
가득하다 [kadukada] a full
가령 [karyong] ad if
가르치다 [karuchida] vt teach
가르침 [karuchim] n teaching
가방 [kabang] n bag
가볍다 [kabyopda] a light
가수 [kasu] n singer
가슴 [kasum] n breast
가장 [kajang] ad most
가져다주다 [kajyodajuda] vt bring
가져오다 [kajyooda] vt bring; fetch
가족 [kajok] n family
가지 [kaji] n branch
가지다 [kajida] vt have
가제 [kaje] n gauze
가지담배 [kachidambaehae] n cigarette
가책 [kachaek] n remorse
가까이 [kaggai] ad near
가을 [kaul] n autumn
각서 [kakso] n note
각서교환 [kaksogyohwan] n exchange of notes
간고하다 [kan-gohada] a arduous
간장 [kanjang] n soy
간편 [kanpan] n sign
간호원 [kanhowon] n nurse
간이식당 [kanisikdang] n snack
바 
갈다 [kalda] vt till 
갈라지다 [kallajida] vi divide 
갈림길 [kallimgil] n forked road 
갑기 [kamgi] n cold 
갑기 들다 [kamgi duld] phrase 
catch cold 
갈다 [kamda] vt wind 
감사 [kamsa] n thank 
감탄하다 [kamtanhada] vi admire 
감 [kap] n price 
강 [kang] n river 
강냉이 [kangnaeng-i] n maize 
강력 [kangryong] n programme 
강물 [kangmul] n water of river 
강좌 [kangiwa] n chair 
강철 [kangchol] n steel 
강토 [kangto] n territory 
강연 [kang-yon] n lecture 
갈다 [katda] a same 
같이 [kachi] ad as 
거기 [kogi] pron that place 
거기에 [kogie] pron dat there 
거대하다 [kodaehada] a great 
거리 [kori] n street 
거절하다 [kojolhada] vt refuse 
거주지 [kojuji] n place of resid. 
거주하다 [kojuhada] vt live [ence 
거의 [koui] ad almost 
건강 [kon-gang] n health 
건강하다 [kon-ganghada] a healthy 
건너가는 곡 [konnogun-got] n crossing 
건느다 [konnuda] vi, vt cross 
건널길 [konnumgil] n crosswalk 
건설 [konsol] n construction 
건설되다 [konsoldoeda] vi be built
고르다 [koruda] vt assort
고맙다 [komapda] a thankful
고상하다 [kosanghada] a lofty
고전음악 [kojonumak] n classical music
고치다 [kochida] vt repair
고향 [kohyang] n native place
고요하다 [koyohada] a still
곧 [kot] ad immediately; namely
곧다 [kotda] a straight
곧바로 [kotbaro] ad straight
골 [kol] n valley
골동품 [koldongpum] n curio
골짜기 [koljjagi] n valley
꽂다 [kopda] a beautiful
곳 [kot] n place
공 [kong] n ball
공기 [kong.gi] n air
공개적 [kong.gaejok] n open
공민 [kongmin] n citizen
공부 [kongbu] n study
공부하다 [kongbuhada] vt study
공산주의 [kongsanjuui] n communism
공산주의자 [kongsanjuuija] n communist
공산주의적 [kongsanjuuijok] n communist
공식적 [kongsikjok] n official
공장 [kongjang] n factory
공장대학 [kongjangdaehak] n university-level factory college
공장대학생 [kongjangdaehaksaeng] n student at a university-level factory college
공포 [kongpo] n fear
공화국 [konghwaguk] n republic
공업 [kong.op] n industry

공업국가 [kong.opgukga] n industrial state
공업화 [kong.opwa] n industrialization
공연 [kong.yon] n performance
공연순서 [kong.yonsunso] n programme
공연하다 [kong.yonhada] vt perform
공원 [kong.won] n park
교과서 [kyogwaso] n textbook
교사 [kyosi] n instructor, teaching
교실 [kyosil] n classroom
교장 [kyojang] n principal
교조주의 [kyojojuui] n dogmatism
교통 [kyotong] n communication
교훈 [kyohun] n lesson
교환 [kyohwan] n exchange
교환수 [kyohwansu] n telephone operator
교환하다 [kyohwanhada] vt exchange
교양 [kyoyang] n education
교양자 [kyoyangja] n educator
교양하다 [kyoyanghada] vt educate
교육 [kyoyuk] n education
교육하다 [kyoyukada] vt educate
교육학 [kyoyukak] n pedagogy
교예 [kyoje] n circus
교예극장 [kyojeugkjang] n circus
교원 [kyowon] n teacher
구 [ku] num nine
구강과의사 [kugang.gwauisa] n dentist
구경 [kugyong] n sightseeing
구경하다 [kugyonghada] vt see
구라파 [kurapa] n Europe
구라파음식 [kurapaumsik] n European food
구락부 [kurakbu] n club (house)
구름 [kurum] n cloud  anguish
구별하다 [kubyolhada] vt distinguish
구심 [kusip] num ninety
구호 [kuho] n slogan
구월 [kuwol] n September
국 [kuk] n soup
국가 [kukga] n state, country
국기 [kukgi] n national flag
국방 [kukbang] n national defense
국수 [kuksu] n noodle  fence
국적 [kukjok] n nationality
국제적 [kukjejok] n international
국제주의 [kukjejuui] n international
국제친선전람관 [kukje-chinsonjollamgwan] n International Friendship Exhibition
국제우편국 [kukje-upyon.guk] n International Post Office
군 [kun] n county
군국주의 [kun-gukjuui] n militarism  militarist
군국주의자 [kun-gukjuuija] n militarist
군관 [kun-gwan] n officer
군대 [kudae] n army
군사적 [kunsajok] n military
군중 [kunjung] n masses
군중대회 [kunjungdasehoe] n mass meeting
군빵 [kunbbang] n toast
군인 [kunin] n army man
군계 [kutge] a ad fo firmly
군다 [kutda] a hard, firm

gol [kul] n oyster
gol다 [kulda] vi roll
골복하다 [kulbokada] vi submit
gol하다 [kulhada] vi submit
골다 [kukda] a thick
g웅전 [kungjon] n palace
규률 [kyuyul] n discipline
규정 [kyujong] n rules
골 [kyul] n orange
그 [ku] pron he; that
것 [kugot] incomp n with
pron it, that
그 녀자 [kunyoja] n with pron
그들 [kudul] pron they
그대 [kuda] pron you
그러나 [kurona] ad but
그러니까 [kuronigga] a con fo
therefore
그러데 [kuronde] a con fo but
그렇게 [kuroke] a ad fo so
그렇다 [kurota] a so  but
그렇지만 [kurochiman] a con fo
그리고 [kurigo] v con fo and
그림 [kurim] n picture  book
그림책 [kurimchaek] n picture
그림엽서 [kurimyopso] n picture
postcard
그저께 [kujogge] n the day before yesterday
그뿐 아니라 [kubbunanira] phrase
besides
극장 [kukjang] n theatre
근로자 [kulloja] n working people
근본 [kunbon] n foundation
글 [kul] n letter; sentence
글자 [kulja] n letter
글씨 [kulssi] n handwriting.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean Word</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>English Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>글쎄 [kulsse]</td>
<td>int</td>
<td>perhaps</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>금 [kum]</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>gold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>금강산 [kumgangsan]</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>Mt. Kumgang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>금요일 [kumyoil]</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>Friday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>금행렬차 [kupaengyolcha]</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>ex.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>기계 [kigye]</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>machine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>기계화하다 [kigyehwahada]</td>
<td>vt</td>
<td>mechanize</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>기관 [kigwan]</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>organ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>기념 [kinyom]</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>commemoration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>기념관 [kinyomgwang]</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>memorial house</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>기념비 [kinyombi]</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>monument</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>기념품 [kinyompum]</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>souvenir</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>기능 [kinung]</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>기다 [kida]</td>
<td>vi</td>
<td>crawl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>기다리다 [kidarida]</td>
<td>vt</td>
<td>wait</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>기다림칸 [kidarimkan]</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>waiting room</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>기록 [kiggo]</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>record</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>기름 [kigum]</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>oil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>기발 [kibbal]</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>flag</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>기분 [kibon]</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>basis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>기사 [kisa]</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>engineer; article</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>기술 [kisul]</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>technique</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>기술자 [kisulja]</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>technician</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>기술혁명 [kisulhyongmyong]</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>technical revolution</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>기자 [kija]</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>journalist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>기적 [kijok]</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>wonder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>기지 [kiji]</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>base</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>기차 [kich]</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>train</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>기초 [kicho]</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>foundation, basis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>기치 [kichi]</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>flag</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>기침 [kichim]</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>cough</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>기침하다 [kichihada]</td>
<td>vi</td>
<td>cough</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>기후 [kihu]</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>climate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>기꺼이 [kigoi]</td>
<td>ad</td>
<td>with pleasure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>기쁘다 [kibbuda]</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>joyful; glad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>기쁨 [kibbmu]</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>joy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>기어이 [kioi]</td>
<td>ad</td>
<td>at any cost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>기업소 [kiopso]</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>enterprise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>기원 [kiwon]</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>era</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>긴양말 [kinyangmal]</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>stockings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>길 [kil]</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>road</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>길다 [kilda]</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>long</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>길이 [kiri]</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>length</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>김 [kim]</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>steam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>김일성경기장 [Kim Il Sung gyong gijang]</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>Kim Il Sung Stadium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>김다 [kipda]</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>deep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>길이1 [kipi]</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>depth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>길이2 [kipi]</td>
<td>ad</td>
<td>deeply</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>개1 [kae]</td>
<td>incomp</td>
<td>n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>개2 [kae]</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>dog</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>개다 [kaeda]</td>
<td>vi</td>
<td>clear up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>개선문 [kaesommun]</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>Arch of Triumph</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>개이다 [kaea]</td>
<td>vi</td>
<td>clear up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>개인 [kaein]</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>individual</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>개인용품 [kaeinyomgum]</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>personal effects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>계급 [kyegup]</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>class</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>계단 [kyedan]</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>stairs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>계단식 승강기 [kyedansik sung-gang-gi]</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>escalator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>계산대 [kyesandae]</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>counter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>계산서 [kyesanpo]</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>account, bill</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>계산하다 [kyesanhada]</td>
<td>vt</td>
<td>count</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>계속 [kyesok]</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>continuation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>계속하다 [kyesokada]</td>
<td>vt</td>
<td>continue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>계승자 [kyesungja]</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>successor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>계시다 [kyesida]</td>
<td>vi</td>
<td>there be.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
be (in the meaning of respect)
계절 [kyejol] n season
계획 [kyehoek] n plan
계약 [kyeyak] n contract
피뢰 [koeroe] n puppet army
피뢰군 [koeroegun] n puppet army
피뢰정권 [koeroejong-gwon] n puppet regime significant
권장하다 [koengjanghada] v make
귀 [kwi] n ear
g꾸국 [kwiguk] n repatriation
귀중품 [kwijungpun] n jewelry
g귀중하다 [kwijunghada] a precious
귀엽다 [kwiyopda] a precious
귀수원 [kwasuwon] n orchard
귀자 [kwaja] n cake
귀학 [kwahak] n science
귀학자 [kwahakja] n scientist
귀학원 [kwahagwon] n academy of sciences
귀염 [kwaop] n task
귀일 [kwail] n fruit
귀일즙 [kwailjup] n fruit juice
귀일청량음료 [kwail-chongryang-umryo] n sherbet
관개 [kwan-gae] n irrigation
관계 [kwan-gye] n relation
관광객 [kwan-gwang-gaek] n tourist
관광지 [kwan-gwangji] n tourist resort
관광안내소 [kwan-gwang-annaeso] n tourist information office
관광자 [kwallamja] n spectator
관리위원회 [kwalliwiwonhoe] n management board
관세 [kwangse] n customs
관찰하다 [kwanchalhada] vi observe about
관하다 [kwanhayo] vi con fo
광고 [kwang.go] n announcement
광부 [kwangbu] n miner
광산 [kwangsan] n mine
광장 [kwangjang] n square
권 [kwon] n book
권리 [kwolli] n right
권위 [kwonwi] n authority

나 [na] pron I
나가는곳 [naganun-got] n exit
나가다 [nagada] vi go out, go
n누다 [nanuda] vi divide
나라 [nara] n country
나르다 [naruda] vi carry
나무 [namu] n tree
나타나다 [natanada] vi appear
나팔 [napal] n trumpet
나쁘다 [nabbuda] a bad
나아가다 [naagada] vi advance
나이 [nai] n age
난곳 [nan.got] n birthplace
난날 [nannal] n date of birth
날 [nal] n day
날다 [nald] vi fly
날리다1 [nallida] causat vi let fly
날리다2 [nallida] pass be flown
날자 [nalja] n date
날씨 [nalsi] n weather
남 [nam] n another person
남다 [namda] vi remain
남새 [namsae] n vegetables
남자 [namja] n man, male
남편 [nampyon] n husband [boy
남학생 [namhaksaeng] n school
남쪽 [namjjok] n south
낫다1 [natda] vi recover
낫다2 [natda] a better
낮 [nat] n daytime; midday
낮다 [natda] a low
낮차 [natcha] n day train
너 [no] pron you
너희 [nohui] pron you
넓리 [nolli] ad widely
넓게 [nolge] a ad fo widely
넓다 [nopda] a wide [over
넓겨주다 [nomgyojuda] vt hand
넘쳐수행하다 [nomchyousahaanenghada] v with con fo overfulfil
넘치다 [nomchida] vi overflow
넘쳐디리 [nopjokdari] n thigh
너가수 [nyogasu] n songstress
너성 [nyosong] n woman
녀자 [nyoja] n woman, female
녀자접대원 [nyoajopdaewon] n waitress, stewardess
녀자음악가 [nyojaumakga] n woman musician [girl
녀학생 [nyohaksaeng] n school
년 [nyon] n year
년간 [nyon-gan] n year
년간계획 [nyon-gan-gyehoek] n annual plan
년원하다 [nyomwonhada] vt wish
노래다 [norata] a yellow
노래 [norae] n song
녹다 [nokda] vi melt
논 [non] n rice-field
놀다 [nolda] vi play
놀음 [norum] n play
놀이감 [noriggam] n toy
농 [nom] n rogue
농막 [nongmak] n farmer’s hut
농막집 [nongmakjip] n farmer’s hut
농민 [nongmin] n farmer
농사 [nongsa] n agriculture
농장 [nongjang] n farm
농촌 [nongchon] n village
농촌경리 [nongchon-gyongri] n rural economy
농대 [nopda] a high
농이 [nopi] ad high [ten
높이다 [nopida] vt elevate, heighten
높다 [nota] v. put, lay
누구 [nugu] pron who
누나 [nuna] n sister
누리하다 [nuruda] a yellow
누리다 [nurida] vt enjoy
누이 [nui] n sister
농대 [nukda] a cheap
눈1 [nun] n eye
눈2 [nun] n snow
눈물 [nunmul] n tear
눈보라 [nunbora] n snowstorm
눈부시다 [nunbusida] a dazzling
눈썹 [nunsop] n eyebrow
눈다 [nupda] vi lie
능하다 [nupida] causat v lay
뉴대 [nyudae] n bond
 느끼다 [nuggida] vt feel
늘 [nul] ad always
늦다 [nukda] vi grow old
늦다 [nutda] a late
님 [nim] suffix Mr.; Mrs.
내 [nae] pron 1; my
내과의사 [naeggwauisa] n physician
내리다 [naerida] vi get down
내쫓다 [naejjotda] vt drive out
내[1] [ne] pron you; your
내[2] [ne] num four
네반째 [nebonjjae] num fourth
네끼리 [nektae] n necktie
넷째 [netjae] num fourth
넷째 [netjae] num four

다 [ta] ad all
다그치다 [taguchida] vt hasten
다르다 [taruda] a different
다리[1] [tari] n leg
다리[2] [tari] n bridge
다리다 [tarida] vt iron
다만 [taman] ad only
다섯 [tasot] num five
다섯(번)째 [tasot(bon)jjae] num
다시 [tasi] ad again 1/fifth
다지다 [tajida] vt harden; strengthen; confirm
다음 [taum] n next
단 [tan] pre-n only
단결 [tangyol] n solidarity
단계 [tangye] n stage
단련 [tallyon] n training
단어 [tano] n word
단다 [tatda] vt shut
달[1] [tal] n moon
달[2] [tal] n month
달다 [taldada] a sweet
달력 [tallyok] n calendar
달리 [talli] ad differently
달리기 [talli] n run 1/ner
달리기선수 [talligionsu] n run-
달리다 [tallida] vi run
달성하다 [talsonghada] vt a-
chieve, attain
닭 [tak] n hen
닭고기 [takgogi] n chicken
닭알 [talgal] n egg
담배 [tambae] n cigarette
담화 [tamhwa] n talk
담례 [tamrye] n return salute
담례방문 [tamryebangmun] n
return visit
담첩 [tapjon] n reply telegram
당 [tang] n party 1/gress
d당대회 [tangdaehoe] n party con-
don당신 [tangsun] n you
당적 [tangjok] n party
당정책 [tangjungchaek] n party
policy
당하다 [tanghada] vt suffer
당원 [tang-won] n party mem-
ber
달다 [tata] vi reach
뛰다 [takda] vt wipe
data [to] ad more
더럽다 [toropda] a dirty
d어렵히다 [toropida] vt soil
d 더욱 [touk] ad more
d 덜 [tol] ad less
d 닫다 [topda] vt cover
d 도 [to] n province
d 덕 [todok] n morals, morality
d덕적 [todokiok] n moral
d 대체 [todaech] ad on earth
d 도마도 [tomado] n tomato
d 무지 [tomuji] ad quiet

d 서관 [tosogwan] n library
d 시 [tosi] n city
d 착 [tochak] n arrival
d 착하다 [tochakada] vi arrive
d 기 [toggi] n ax
d 독 [tok] n earthenware jar
d 독립 [tongri] n independence
d 독재 [tokjae] n dictatorship
d 독창 [tokchang] n solo
d 돈 [ton] n money exchange
d 돈바꾸기 [tonbaggugi] n money

d 동반하는곳 [tonbannun-got] n cash-desk
d 올다 [tolda] vi turn back
d 돌려주다 [tollyojuda] vt give
d 돌진하다 [toljinhada] vi rush
d 돌아가다 [toragada] vi, vt go back
d 돌아오다 [toraoda] vi, vt come back
d 올 [tol] n anniversary
d 올다 [topda] vt help
d 옵무 [tongmu] n comrade
d 옵물 [tongmul] n animal

동물원 [tongmurwon] n zoo
동맹 [tongmaeng] n alliance
동상 [tongsang] n statue
동시 [tongsi] n same time
동지 [tongji] n comrade
동르다 [tong tuda] phrase dawn
동쪽 [tong(jjok)] n east
d 동안 [tong-an] n time
d 동요 [tongyang] n vacillation

못대 [totdae] n mast
두 [tu] num two
d 두려워하다 [turyowohada] vt fear
d 두번째 [tubonjjae] num second
돌 [tul] num two
d 돌째 [tuljjae] num second
d 돌골다 [tung.gulda] a round
d 돌지 [tungji] n nest
d 드리다 [turida] vt give (in the meaning of respect)
d 드물다 [tumulda] a seldom
d 들다 [tulda] vt hear
d 들 [tul] n field
d 들다 1 [tulda] vi come in
d 들다 2 [tulda] vt take
d 들리다 [tullida] vi drop in
d 들어가는곳 [turoganun-got] n entrance
d 들어서다 [turosona] vi step in
d 들어오다 [turooda] vi come in
d 들 [tung] n back
d 등기편지 [tung.gipyonji] n registered letter
d 돌대 [tungdae] n lighthouse
d 등록장 [tungrokjang] n hotel register
d 대 1 [tae] n generation
d 대 2 [tae] incomp n piece
d 대 3 [tae] prefix large, big
대극장 [taegukjang] n Grand Theatre
대낮 [taenat] n broad daylight
대다 [taeda] vt make an call
대단히 [taedani] ad very
대담하다 [taedamhada] a bold
대담 [taedap] n answer
대담하다 [taedapada] vi answer
대동강 [taedong-gang] n Taedong River
대동문 [taedongmun] n Taedong Gate
대대적 [taedaejok] n large-scale
대략 [taeryak] n about, approximately
대로 [taero] incomp n "as"
대리인 [taeriin] n deputy
대문 [taemun] n front gate
대사 [taesa] n ambassador
대사관 [taesagwan] n embassy
대생산업명렬사릉 [taesongsan hyongmyongryolsanung] n Taesongsan Revolutionary Martyrs' Cemetery
대자연 [taejayon] n great nature
대접하다 [taejopada] vt entertain, serve
대주다 [taejuda] vt show
대중 [taejung] n masses
대통령 [taetongryong] n president
대포 [taepo] n gun
대표 [taepyo] n delegate
대표단 [taepyodan] n delegation
대표단단장 [taepyodandanjang] n head of a delegation
대풍 [taepung] n rich harvest
대하다 [taehada] vt confront
대하여 [taehayo] vt con fo for
대학 [taehak] n university; college
대학생 [taehaksaeng] n student
대외무역 [taoemuyok] n foreign trade
대외적 [taoejok] n foreign
대의원 [taeuiwon] n deputy
대원 [taewon] n member of troops
day [te] incomp n place; case
되다1 [toeda] a hard
되다2 [toeda] vi become
뒤 [twi] n back
뒤떨어진다 [twiddorojida] vi drop behind
뒤에 [twie] n dat behind
돼지 [twaeji] n pig
돼지고기 [twaejigogi] pork

라디오 [raji] n radio
라틴아메리카 [ratinamerika] n Latin America
락원 [ragwon] n paradise
락랄하다 [ryaktalhada] vt plunder

[382]
inspection of passports
passport number
purpose of the journey
destination of the journey
travel bureau
history
connection
regiment
solidarity
alliance
continuously
train
dining car
leadership
consult late
consul
receipt
territory
sphere
labour
labour hero
article
debate
dish, food
ruble
June
six
sixty
prosperity
theory
take-off
barber
barber's shop
have one's hair cut
rectors
board of directors
understanding
understand
use
interests
stand-point
next month
tomorrow
lemonade
만일 [manil] n if
많다 [manta] a many, much
많다 [mani] ad much
말누어 [mannui] n eldest sister
말 [mal] n horse
말 [mal] n word, language
말다 [malda] vt roll
말다 [malda] verb which is used as an auxiliary "not"
말하다 [malhada] vi, vt say, speak, tell
말하자면 [malhajamyon] v con fo so to speak
말씀 [massum] n word (in the meaning of respect)
말씀하다 [massumhada] vt say (in the meaning of respect)
많다 [makda] a clear
말아지다 [malgajida] v with con fo clear up
맞 [mat] n taste
맞보다 [matboda] v with n taste
맞다 [matda] vi fit
맞다 [matda] vt be struck, be exposed
맞추다 [matchuda] vt make fit
맞이하다 [majihada] vt receive
말켜지다 [matgyojida] pass be entrusted
말기다 [matgida] causat v entrust
머리 [mori] n head
머리말 [morimal] n foreword
머리수건 [morisugon] n kerchief
머리카락 [morikal] n hair
머리아픔 [moriapum] n headache
먹다 [mokda] vt eat
먹이다 [mogida] causat v let eat
먼저 [monjo] ad first
멀다 [moda] a far
멀리 [molli] ad far away
못다 [motda] vi stop [days
며칠 [myochil] n how many
연도 [myondo] n shaving
연도칼 [myondokal] n razor
명 [myong] incompt n person
명년 [myongnyon] n next year
명령 [myongryong] n order
명승지 [myongsungji] n famous spots
명절 [myongjol] n festival day
명예칭호 [myongyechingho] n honorary title
몇 [myot] pron how many
모두 [modu] ad all
모든 [modun] pre-n all
모르다 [moruda] vt do not know
모래 [morae] n sand
모레 [more] n the day after tomorrow
모범 [mobom] n model
모자 [moja] n hat, cap
모자리다 [mojarada] vi be short
모이다 [moida] pass come together
모임 [moin] n meeting
목 [mok] n neck
목란꽃 [mongran-ggot] n magnolia
목적 [mokjok] n purpose, aim
목적지 [mokjokjji] n destination
목표 [mokpyo] n goal, target
목요일 [mogyoil] n Thursday
목욕 n [mogyok] n bathing
목욕실 [mogyoksil] n bathroom
목욕관 [mogyokkan] n bathroom
목욕탕 [mogyoktang] n bath
목욕하다 [mogyokada] vi bathe
볼아내다 [moranaeda] vt drive
몸 [mom] n body [out
몸소 [momso] ad personally
몸시 [mopsi] ad very
못 [mot] ad not
못내 [monnae] ad very
못하다 [motada] a not
못하다 [motada] vt cannot
무기 [mugi] n weapon
무겁다 [mugopda] a heavy
무게 [muge] n weight
무궤도전차 [mugwedojoncha] n trolley bus
무덤다 [mudopda] a sultry
무대 [mudaes] n stage
무릎 [murup] n knee
무슨 [musun] pron what
무장 [mujang] n armaments
무장시키다 [mujangsikida] causat v make arm
무장하다 [mujanghada] vi, vt arm
무조건 [mujogon] n unconditionally
무지개 [mujigae] n rainbow
무엇 [muot] pron what
무역 [muyok] n trade
무역협정 [muyokhyopjong] n trade agreement
무용가 [muyong-ga] n dancer
문 [mun] n door, gate
문법 [munbop] n grammar
바지 [paji] n trousers
바지다 [pachida] vt devote
바퀴 [pakwi] n wheel
바꾸다 [pagguda] vt exchange
바쁘게 [pabbuga] adv busy
바쁘다 [pabbu]a busy
박다 [pakda] vt strike in
박물관 [pangmulgwan] n museum
박수 [paksu] n hand clapping
박히다 [pakida] pass be struck in gladness
반가이 [pan·gai] ad joyfully
반갑다 [pan·gapda] a joyful, glad
반도 [pando] n peninsula
반드시 [pandusi] ad certainly, surely
반대하다 [pandaehada] vt oppose
반면 [panmyon] n contrary
반미 [panmi] n anti-US (imperialist)
반복하다 [panbokada] vt repeat
반숙한 닭알 [pansukan dalgal] n with att fo soft boiled egg
반주하다 [panjuhada] vt play a person's accompaniment
반제 [panje] n anti-imperialism; anti-imperialist
반제련대성 [panjeryondaessong] n anti-imperialist solidarity
반제적 [panjejok] n anti-imperialist
반창고 [panchang-go] n adhesive
발는 사람 [pannun saram] n with att fo receiver; addressee
발다 [patda] vt receive sept
발아들이다 [padadurida] vt acc.
late
번역원 [ponyogwon] n translator
번영 [ponyong] n prosperity
번영하다 [ponyoghada] vi prosper
벌¹ [pol] n bee (clothes)
벌² [pol] incomp n a suit (of
벌써 [polssso] ad already
범 [pom] n tiger
법 [pop] n law
법령 [pomryong] n law
법 [pot] n friend
법다 [potda] vt take off
비 [pyo] n rice plant: unhulled
벽 [pyok] n wall [rice
변소 [pyonso] n toilet
변하다 [pyonhada] vi, vt change
변 [pyol] n star
병¹ [pyong] n bottle
병² [pyong] n illness
병사 [pyongsas] n soldier
병원 [pyong.won] n hospital
보고하다 [pogohada] vt report
보고자리 [pogumjari] n nest
보내는 사람 [ponaemun saram] n
with at fo sender
보내다 [ponaeda] vt send
보다 [podaa] vt see
보증 [pojung] n guarantee
보통강라관 [potong·gangrye gwan] n Potonggang Hotel
보험 [pohom] n insurance
보험주다 [poyojudia] v with con fo show
보이다¹ [poida] pass be seen
보이다² [poida] causat v let see
복도 [pokdo] n corridor
복무하다 [pongmuhada] vi serve
복숭아 [poksung.a] n peach
복잡하다 [pokjapada] a complic.
봄 [pom] n spring [ated
봄날 [pomnal] n spring day
봄바람 [pombaram] n spring breeze
봉투 [pontu] n envelope
부¹ [pu] n department, minis-
부² [pu] n copy [try
부탁하다 [pudakchida] vi run a-
again; encounter with
부드럽다 [puduropda] a soft
부디 [pudi] ad surely
부르다 [puruda] vt call; sing
부모 [pumo] n parents
부문 [pumun] n branch
부부 [pubu] n husband and wife
부분 [pubun] n part
부장 [pujang] n minister
부지런하다 [pujironhada] a di-
ingent
부지런히 [pujironi] ad diligent-
ly
부지다 [puchida] vt send
부탁하다 [putakada] vt request
부러 [puto] aux end from
부엌 [puok] n kitchen
부엌문 [puongmun] n door of
kitchen
부엌열 [puongnil] n kitchen
북(쪽) [puk(jjok)] n north
분¹ [pun] n minute
분² [pun] incomp n person
분계선 [pun·gyeson] n demarca-
tion line
분대 [pundae] n squad
분수 [punsu] n fountain
불 [pul] n fire
 불탄다 [pulda] vi blow
불탄다 [pultada] vi burn
불편하다 [pulpyonhada] a inconvenient
불탄다 [pukda] a red
불은기 [pulgun gi] n red flag
불대 [pungdae] n bandage
불봉 [pungbung] ad buzz
비 [pi] n rain
비겁한자 [pigopanja] n coward
비날론 [pinallon] n vinalon
비누 [pinu] n soap
비다 [pidal] a vacant, empty
비단 [pidan] n silk
비로소 [piroso] ad for the first time
비록 [pirok] ad even if
비료 [piryo] n fertilizer
비서 [piso] n secretary
비치다 [pichida] vi shine
비행기 [pihaeng gi] n aeroplane
비행기시간표 [pihaeng gisiganpyo] n time table
비행기표 [pihaeng gipyo] n airline ticket
비행사 [pihaengsa] n airman
비행장 [pihaengjang] n airport
비행장관세 [pihaengjang gwanse] n airport tax
비싸다 [pissada] a expensive
비어 있음 [piyoissum] n vacant
비웃 [piot] n raincoat
빛 [pit] n comb
빛다 [pitda] vt comb
방상관 [pingsang gwan] n Ice Rink
빛 [pit] n debt
빛 [pit] n light
빛나다 [pinnada] vi shine
배 1 [pae] n belly
배 2 [pae] n ship
배 3 [pae] n pear
배 4 [pae] n times
배구 [paegu] n volleyball
배다 [paeda] a thick
배려 [paeryo] n solicitude, care
배우 [paeu] n actor
배우기 [paegi] n learning
배우다 [paeda] vt learn
백 [paek] num hundred fdu
백두산 [paekdusan] n Mt. Paek-
백만 [paengman] num million
백화점 [paekwajom] n department store
베개 [pegae] n pillow
베다 [peda] vt cut
뵈다 [poeda] vt see (in the meaning of respect)

사 [sa] num four
사귀다 [sagwida] vi, vt make friends with
사과 [sagwa] n apple
사다 [sada] vt buy
사라지다 [sarajida] vi disappear
사람 [saram] n man
사랑 [sarang] n love
사랑하다 [saranghada] vt love
사명 [samyong] n mission
사무원 [samuwon] n office worker
사상 [sasang] n idea
사상적 [sasangjok] n ideological
사상혁명 [sasanghyongmyong] n ideological revolution
사실 [sasil] n fact
사십 [sasip] num forty
사적지 [sajokji] n historical places
사전 [sajon] n dictionary
사절 [sajol] n delegate
사증 [sajung] n visa
사증번호 [sajungbonho] n visa number
사진 [sajin] n photo
사진기 [sajin·gi] n camera
사진찍기 [sajinjjikgi] n photographing
사진용품상점 [sajinyongpumsangjom] n camera shop
사탕 [satang] n sugar
사탕가루 [satang·garu] n soft sugar
사회 [sahoe] n society
사회적 [sahoejok] n social
사회주의 [sahoejuui] n socialism
사회주의적 [sahoejuuijok] n socialist
사업 [saop] n work
사용하다 [sayonghada] vt use
사이다 [saida] n fizzy drink
사월 [sawol] n April
산 [san] n mountain
산보하다 [sanbohada] vi take a walk
산부인과의사 [sanbuin·gwauisa] n gynaecologist
산원 [sanwon] n maternity hospital
살 [sal] n flesh
살 [sal] n age
살가죽 [salgajuk] n skin
살다 [salda] vi live
살림집 [sallimjip] n dwelling
살다 [samda] vt boil
살은 �*>(abal [salmun dalgal] n with att fo boiled egg
삼 [sam] num three
삼가 [samga] ad respectfully
삼십 [samsip] num thirty
삼월 [samwol] n March
삽 [sap] n spade, shovel
삽 [sang] n prize
삽당히 [sangdangi] ad considerably
삽봉 [sangbong] n meeting
삽상 [sangsang] n imagination
삽상하다 [sangsanghada] vt imagine
삽수건 [sangsugon] n napkin
삽점 [sangjom] n shop
삽업 [sang·op] n commerce
삽영하다 [sang·yonghada] vt give a performance
삽광주 [syampangju] n champagne
서기 [sogi] n secretary
서늘하다 [sonulhada] a cool
서다 [soda] vi stand
서로 [soro] ad each other
서른 [sorun] num thirty
서명하다 [somyonghada] vi sign one's name
서해갑문 [sohaegammun] n West Sea Barrage
서(쪽) [so(jjok)] n west
석탄 [soktan] n coal
선거 [son-go] n election
선거권 [son-goggwon] n voting rights
선거하다 [son-gohada] vt elect
선물 [sonmul] n present
선물상점 [sonmulsangjom] n souvenir shop
선생 [sonnaeng] n teacher
선장 [sonjang] n captain
선택 [sontaek] n selection
설날 [sollal] n New Year's Day
설사 [solsa] n diarrhoea
섬유 [somyu] n fibre
셋 [sot] imp fo stop!
성 [song] n sex
성 2 [song] n family name
성격 [song-gyok] n character
성공하다 [song-gonghada] vt succeed
성과 [song-gwa] n success
성남 [songnyang] n match
성명 [songmyong] n statement
성별 [songbyol] n sex distinction
성스럽다 [songsuropda] a sacred
성원 [songwon] n member
소 [so] n cow, bull
소고기 [sogogi] n beef
소금 [sogum] n salt
소개 [sogae] n introduction
소개하다 [sogaehada] vt introduce
소나무 [sonamu] n pine
소녀 [sonyo] n girl
소년 [sonyon] n boy
소년단원 [sonyondanwon] n Child's Union member
소리 [sori] n sound
소리치다 [sorichida] v with cry
소멸하다 [somyolhada] vt wipe out
소설가 [sosolga] n novelist
소식 [sosik] n news
소젖 [sojot] n milk
소포 [sopo] n parcel
소환장 [sohwanjang] n letter of recall
소아과의사 [soaggwauisa] n child specialist, paediatrician
속 [sok] n inside
속내의 [songnaeui] n underwear
속도 [sokdo] n speed
손 [son] n hand
손가락 [son-garak] n finger
손님 [sonnim] n guest
손바닥 [sonbadak] n palm (of the hand)
손수건 [sonsugon] n handkerchief
손집 [sonjim] n hand baggage
손침말기는곳 [sonjimmatginungot] n cloakroom
손톱 [sontop] n fingernail
수 [su] n number
수고하다 [sugohada] vi take trouble, do a service
수단 [sudan] n means
수도 1 [sudo] n water-works
수도 2 [sudo] n capital
수량 [suryang] n quantity
수령 [suryong] n leader
수리하다 [surihada] vt repair
수록하다 [susokada] vt go through the formalities
수송 [susong] n transport
수자 [sujja] n figure nism
수정주의 [sujongjuui] n revision-
수족관 [sujokgwan] n aquarium
수준 [sujun] n level
수출 [suchul] n export
수출품 [suchulpum] n export
   goods
수출하다 [suchulhada] vt export
수표 [supyo] n signature
수표하다 [supyohada] vi sign
수행하다 [suhaenghada] vt carry
   out
수업 [suop] n lessons
수요일 [suyoil] n Wednesday
수입 [suip] n import
수입하다 [suipada] vt import
숙영지 [sugyongji] n billeting
   area
순간 [sun-gan] n moment
순대 [sundae] n sausage
솔가락 [sutgarak] n spoon
솔 [sul] n wine
스물 [sumul] num twenty
스스로 [susuro] ad for oneself
슬기롭다 [sulgiropda] a wise
슬프다 [sulpuda] a sad
승강기 [sung-gang-gi] n elevator,
   lift
승냥이 [sungnyang-i] n wolf
승리 [sungri] n victory
승용차 [sung-yongcha] n passenger
   car
시 [si] n o’clock
시간 [sigan] n time
시간차이 [siganchai] n difference
   in time
시간표 [siganpyo] n timetable
시계 [sigye] n watch
시계상점 [sigyesangjom] n watch
   shop
시내 [sinae] n city centre
시내구경 [sinaegugyong] n city
   sightseeing
시내관광버스 [sinaegwan-gwang
   bbosu] n city sightseeing bus
시내버스 [sinaebbosu] n city bus
시다 [sida] a sour
시대 [sidae] n era
시리 [siryon] n trial
시작 [sijak] n beginning
시작하다 [sijakada] vt begin
시장 [sijang] n market
시합 [sihap] n match
시험 [sihom] n examination
시인 [siin] n poet
시외버스 [sioebbosu] n long-dis-
   tance bus
시월 [siwol] n October
식당 [sikdang] n dining room;
   restaurant
식료품 [singnyopum] n foodstuff
식료품상점 [singnyopumsangjom]
   n grocer’s shop, grocery
식물 [singmul] n plant
식물원 [singmulwon] n botani-
   cal garden
식사 [siksa] n meal
식사하다 [sikshada] vi have a
   meal
식사안내표 [siksaannaepyo] n m-
   enu
식초 [sikcho] n vinegar
식후대과 [sikudagwa] n dessert
식육 [sigyok] n appetite
신 [sin] n shoes
신경과의사 [sin'gyong-gwa'uisa] n neurologist
신고하다 [sin-gohada] vt declare
신다 [sinda] vt put on
신문 [sim'nun] n newspaper
신발 [sin'bal] n shoes
신발상점 [sin'ba'sangjom] n shoe store
신청하다 [sinchong'ghada] vt request
신임장 [sinim'jang] n credentials
실로 [sileo] ad really
실재적으로 [sil'jejoguro] n inst really [size
실현하다 [silhyon'ghada] vt realize
실각하다 [simgakada] a serious
심장 [sim'jang] n heart
심 [sip] num ten
심자로 [sip'aro] n crossroad
십이 [sibi] num twelve
십이월 [sibi'wol] n December
십일 [sibil] num eleven
십일월 [sibi'rwol] n November
싫다 [sip'da] verb which is used as an auxiliary want
새 1 [sae] n bird
새 2 [sae] pre-n new
새롭다 [saerop'da] a new
새해 [saehae] n new year
색 [saek] n colour
색갈 [saekgal] n colour
생각 [saeng-gak] n thought
생각하다 [saeng-gakada] vi, vt think

생과자 [saeng-gwa'aja] n cake
생닭알 [saengdal'gal] n fresh egg
생명 [saengmyong] n life
생산 [saengsan] n production
생산하다 [saengsanhada] vi, vt produce
생선국 [saengs'on-guk] n fish soup
생채 [saengchae] n salad
생활 [saenghw'al] n life
생일 [saeng-il] n birthday
세 [se] num three
세금 [segum] n tax
세계 [seg'ye] n world
세계적 [seg'yejok] n world-wide
세관 [segwan] n customs
세다 1 [sed'a] a strong
세다 2 [sed'a] vt count
세대 [sedae] n generation
세번째 [sebonj'jae] num third
세상 [sesang] n world
세탁소 [setak'so] n laundry
세우다 [seuda] causat v make stand, set up
셋 [set] num three
셋째 [setji'jae] num third
쇠 [soe] n iron
쇠다 [soeda] vt celebrate
쉬는날 [swi'nun nal] n with att fo holiday, off day
쉬다 [swida] vi, vt rest from one's work
쉰 [swi'n] num fifty
쉬다 [swip'da] a easy
| 자 [cha] | int | well |
| 자기 [chagi] | pron | self, oneself |
| 자네 [chane] | pron | you |
| 자다 [chada] | vi | sleep |
| 자동차 [chadongcha] | n | car |
| 자동차운전수 [chadongchaunjonsu] | n | driver |
| 자동화 [chadonghwa] | n | automation |
| 자라다 [charada] | vi | grow |
| 자랑하다 [charanghada] | vi, vt | be proud of |
| 자료 [charyo] | n | materials |
| 자르다 [charuda] | vt | cut |
| 자리 [chari] | n | place |
| 자리번호 [charibonho] | n | seat number |
| 자리표 [charipyo] | n | boarding card |
| 자립 [charip] | n | self-sustenance |
| 자본가 [chabon-ga] | n | capitalist |
| 자본주의 [chabonjuui] | n | capitalism |
| 자본주의적 [chabonjuuijok] | n | capitalist |
| 자신 [chasin] | n | self, oneself |
| 자전거 [chajon-go] | n | bicycle |
| 자주¹ [chaju] | n | independence |
| 자주² [chaju] | ad | often |
| 자주성 [chajussong] | n | Chajuso-
<p>| 자주적 [chajujok] | n | independent |
| 자재 [chjae] | n | material |
| 자연 [chayon] | n | nature |
| 자육하다 [chaukada] | a | thick |
| 자위 [chawi] | n | self-defence |
| 착가 [chakga] | n | writer |
| 착곡가 [chakgokga] | n | composer |
| 작다 [chakda] | a | small, little |
| 작전 [chakjon] | n | (military) operations |
| 작업 [chagop] | n | work |
| 작업반 [chagopban] | n | work-team |
| 잔 [chan] | n | cup, glass |
| 잔돈 [chandon] | n | small change |
| 잘 [chal] | ad | well; skillfully |
| 잠 [cham] | n | sleep |
| 잠깐 [chamgan] | n | short time; for a while |
| 잠들다 [chamdulda] | vi | fall asleep |
| 잠시 [chamsi] | n | for a while |
| 잠자다 [chamjada] | vi | sleep |
| 잠다 [chapda] | vt | catch |
| 잠수시다 [chapsusida] | vt | eat (in the meaning of respect) |
| 잡지 [chapji] | n | magazine |
| 잡나무 [channamu] | n | pine-nut |
| 장 [chang] | n | sheet | tree |
| 장갑 [chang-gap] | n | gloves |
| 장기 [chang.gi] | n | chess |
| 장령 [changryong] | n | general |
| 장마 [changma] | n | long (spell of) rain |
| 장미 (꽃) [changmi(ggot)] | n | rose |
| 장비 [changbi] | n | equipment |
| 장판지 [changddanji] | n | calf |
| 저¹ [cho] | pron | that |
| 저² [cho] | pron | 1 |
| 저가락 [choggarak] | n | chopsticks |
| 저기 [chogi] | pron | that place |
| 저기에 [chogie] | pron | dat there |
| 저녁 [chonyo] | n | evening |
| 저녁밥 [chonyokbap] | n | supper |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean Word</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>써니식사</td>
<td>supper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>써니에</td>
<td>dat in the evening</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>써절로</td>
<td>ad of itself, of oneself</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>저회</td>
<td>pron we</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>적</td>
<td>enemy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>적극적</td>
<td>active</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>적극적으로</td>
<td>inst actively</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>적다</td>
<td>a few, little, small</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>적용하다</td>
<td>apply</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>전</td>
<td>before</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>전기</td>
<td>electricity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>전기차</td>
<td>electric train</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>전람관</td>
<td>exhibition hall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>전람회</td>
<td>exhibition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>전보</td>
<td>telegram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>전보용지</td>
<td>telegram form</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>전부</td>
<td>all</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>전사</td>
<td>soldier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>전선</td>
<td>(battle) front</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>전진하다</td>
<td>advance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>전쟁</td>
<td>war</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>전차</td>
<td>streetcar, tram car</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>전체</td>
<td>whole, all</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>전취물</td>
<td>gains</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>전통</td>
<td>tradition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>전투</td>
<td>battle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>전투적</td>
<td>militant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>전하다</td>
<td>inform</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>전화</td>
<td>telephone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>전우</td>
<td>comrade-in-arms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>전예</td>
<td>before</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>절다</td>
<td>a young</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>점</td>
<td>point</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>점수</td>
<td>mark</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>점심</td>
<td>lunch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>점심밥</td>
<td>lunch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>점심시간</td>
<td>dinner hour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>점심식사</td>
<td>lunch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>점검</td>
<td>interview, reception, waiter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>점대원</td>
<td>steward</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>점수</td>
<td>front desk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>점수하다</td>
<td>receive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>점시</td>
<td>plate, live</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>정거장</td>
<td>railway station</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>정권</td>
<td>political</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>정류소</td>
<td>stop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>정말</td>
<td>truly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>정상적으로</td>
<td>in a regular way</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>정식</td>
<td>table d'hôte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>정신</td>
<td>spirit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>정전</td>
<td>ceasefire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>정전협정</td>
<td>armistice agreement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>정지</td>
<td>stop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>정치</td>
<td>politics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>정책</td>
<td>policy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>정책적</td>
<td>of policy</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
조직 [chojik] n organization
조직생활 [chojiksaenghwal] n organizational life
조직하다 [chojikada] vt organize
조영사전 [choyongsajon] n Korean-English dictionary
조용하다 [choyonghada] a quiet, silent, still
조용히 [choyong-i] ad still
존경 [chonggyong] n respect
존재 [choniae] n existence
졸업하다 [choropada] vt graduate
 좀 [chom] ad a little
좀다 [chopda] a narrow
종합대학 [chonghap-daehak] n university
종업원 [chong-obwon] n employees
종이 [chong-i] n paper
좋다 [chota] a good
주 [chu] n week
주권 [chugwon] n sovereignty
주년 [chunyon] n anniversary
주다 [chuda] vt give
주무시다 [chumusida] vi sleep
(in the meaning of respect)
주문하다 [chumunhada] vt order
주인 [chumin] n inhabitants
주사 [chusa] n injection
주석 [chusok] n president
주소 [chuso] n address
주체 [chuche] n Juche Idea
주체사상 [chuchesasang] n Juche
주체사상탑 [chuchesasangtap] n the Tower of Juche Idea
주체적 [chuchejok] n Juche
주택 [chutaek] n dwelling
(house)
제국주의 [cheugukjuui] n imperialism
제국주의자 [cheugukjuuija] n imperialist
제기하다 [cheugihada] vt propose
제도 [chedo] n system
제철 [chechol] n suitable time
제의하다 [cheuihada] vt propose
쥐 [chwi] n rat

大 [ch]

차 [cha] n car
차 [cha] n tea
차다 [chada] a cold
차례 [charye] n order
차장 [chajang] n conductor
차표 [chapyo] n ticket
차이 [chai] n difference
착륙 [changryuk] n landing [plot
착취하다 [chakchwihada] vt ex-
찬성 [chansong] n approval r ant
찬연하다 [chanyonhada] a brilli-
찬음식 [chanumsik] n entrée
참가하다 [chamgahada] vi take
part in
참관 [chamgwan] n visit visit
참관하다 [chamgwanhada] vt v-
참으로 [chamuro] ad really
참외 [chamoe] n melon
창광산려관 [chang·gwangsanryo
gwan] n Changgwangsan Ho-
창문 [changmun] n window [te]
창조하다 [changjohada] vi, vt
찾다 [chatda] vt seek create
처방 [chobang] n prescription
처음 [choum] n first
천 [chon] n cloth
천 [chon] num thousand
천리 [cholli] n one thousand ri
천리마 [chollima] n Chollima
천리마동상 [chollimadongsang] n
Chollima Statue
천만에 [chanmane] num dat you
are welcome
천천히 [chonchoni] ad slowly
철 [chol] n iron way
철길 [cholgil] n railroad, rail-
철관지원수 [cholchonjiwonssu] n
sworn enemy
철훼 [cholpe] n abolish
첫 번째 [chot(bon)jjae] num
first
청년 [chongnyon] n youth
청산하다 [chongsanhada] vt set-
tle an account
초 [cho] n second exceed
조과하다 [chogwahada] vi, vt
조대장 [chodaejjang] n invita-
tion card
조대하다 [chodaehada] vt invite
조상화 [chosanghwa] n portrait
조소 [choso] n post
총 [chong] n gun
총리 [chongri] n premier
총비서 [chongbiso] n General
Secretary; general secretary
총제로 [chongchero] n inst totally
초콜레트 [chyokolletu] n chocolate
추다 [chuda] vt dance
추동하다 [chudonghada] vt pro-
취급하다 [chwigupada] vi., vt treat
취사원 [chwisawon] n cook
취소하다 [chwisohada] vi., vt cancel

칼 [kal] n knife
커피 [kopi] n coffee
컬레 [kolle] n pair
코 [ko] n nose
코코아 [kokoa] n cocoa
콤유니케 [kommyunike] n com-

크 [k] munique
콩 [kong] n bean
콩 [kung] ad plump
크다 [kuda] a big, large
처로메터 [kirometo] n kilometre
광 [kwang] ad bang

라고가다 [tagogada] v with con
fo go (by vehicles )
라다 [tada] vt get on \row
라도하다 [tadohada] vt overth-
라산하다 [tasanhadada] vt take
into consideration
라자기 [tajagi] n typewriter
라오르다 [taoruda] vi burn up
락구 [takgu] n ping-pong; table-
tennis
락아소 [tagaso] n nursery
란부 [tanbu] n coal-miner
란산물 [tansanmul] n soda wa-
ter
타나생하다 [tansaenghadada] vi be
활지면 [taljimyon] n absorbent
cotton
랍 [tap] n tower
리지다 [tojida] vi burst
턱 [tok] n jaw, chin
토론 [toron] n debate
토론자 [toronja] n debater
토론하다 [toronhada] vi., vt
debate
토요일 [toyoil] n Saturday
토의하다 [touihada] vt discuss
톱 [top] n saw
통 [tong] n barrel
통과사용 [tong·gwasajung] n
transit visa
통출입 [tongjorim] n tinned
goods
통지하다 [tongjihada] vt inform
통역 [tong·yok] n interpreta-
tion; interpreter
통역하다 [tong·yokada] vi., vt
interpret
통역원 [tong·yogwon] n inter-
preter
통일 [tong·il] n unification
통일전선 [tong·iljonson] n unit-
ed front
통일하다 [tong·ilhada] vt unify
투사 [tusa] n fighter
투쟁 [tujjaeng] n struggle
트램크 [turongku] n trunk
특별하다 [tukbyolhada] a special
특별히 [tukbyori] ad especially
특히 [tuki] ad especially
풀리다 [tullida] vi be mistaken
래도 [taedo] n attitude
래양 [taeyang] n sun
래영이나 [taeyonada] vi be born
래우다 [taeuda] causat v take in
택시 [taeksi] n taxi
택시정류소 [taeksjongryuso] n taxi stand
래제 [teje] n thesis
텔레비죤 [tellebijyon] n television

帕피 [pagoe] n destruction
帕 피하다 [pagoehada] vt destroy
帕도 [pado] n wave
帕마 [pama] n permanent wave
帕 시즘 [pasijum] n fascism
帕 운드 [paundu] n pound
판매원 [panmaewon] n seller
팔 1 [pal] n arm
팔 2 [pal] num eight
박다 [palda] vt sell
パラ다리 [paldari] n limb
パル 십 [palsip] num eighty
パル 껍치 [palggumchi] n elbow
パル 웰 [parwol] n August
파지다 [pojida] vi spread fent
편리하다 [pyollihada] a convenient
편지 [pyonji] n letter
평화 [pyonghwasa] n peace [ful]
평화롭다 [pyonghwaropda] a peaceful
평화적 [pyonghwajok] n peaceful
평화지대 [pyonghwajidaewa] n peace zone
평양 [pyongyang] n Pyongyang
평양국제문화회관 [pyongyang-guk jemunhwagaewon] n Pyongyang International House of Culture

[pyongyangdaeguk jang] n
 Pyongyang Grand Theatre
평양안전원 [pyongyangsanwon] n
 Pyongyang Maternity Hospital
평양지하철도 [pyongyangjiehachol do] n
 Pyongyang Metro
평양체육관 [pyongyangcheyukgw an] n
 Pyongyang Indoor Stadium
포도 [podo] n grapes
포도술 [podosul] n grape wine
포크 [poku] n fork
포위 [powi] n encirclement
폭격 [pokgyok] n bombing
폭력 [pongryok] n violence
표 [pyo] n ticket
표값 [pyogap] n fare
표가는곳 [pyopanun-got] n ticket office
표현하다 [pyohyonhada] vt express
푸르다 [puruda] a blue
풀 [pul] n grass
품 [pum] n breast, bosom
품 성 [pumsong] n character
품부하다 [pungbuhada] a rich
품습 [pungsup] n custom
프로레타리아 [puroretaria] n proletarian
프라트홈 [puraetuhom] n plat.
피 [pi] n blood
피곤하다 [pigonhada] a get tired
피다 [pida] vi bloom
피부 [pibu] n skin
피부과의사 [pibuggwauisa] n dermatologist

파야노 [piano] n piano
피압박민족 [piapbakminjok] n oppressed nation
필름 [pillim] n film
필요하다 [piryohada] a neces.
폐 [pe] n lung
폐지 [peji] n page
펜 [pen] n pen

하나 [hana] num one
한들 [hanul] n sky
하다 [hada] vt do
하마르면 [hamatumyon] adj near.
학교 [hakgyo] n school
학습 [haksup] n study
학습당 [haksupdang] n study
학습장 [haksupjang].n notebook
학습하다 [haksupada] vt study
학생 [haksaeng] n pupil
학생소년궁전 [haksaengsonyon'g unjon] n students and children's palace
한 [han] num one
한결같이 [han.gyolga] adv unanimously
한계 [han.gye] n limit
한없이 [hanopsi] adj limitlessly
할머니 [halmoni] n grandmother
할아버지 [haraboji] n grandfather
함께 [hamgge] adv together
합격하다 [hapgyokada] vi, vt pass
합창 [hapchang] n chorus
항공 [hang.gong] n aviation

항공편 [hang.gongpyon] n by air mail
항공편지 [hang.gongpyonji] n air letter
항공우편 [hang.gong.upyon] n air letter
항구 [hang.gu] n harbour
항로번호 [hangrobonho] n flight number
항상 [hagsang] adj always
항일 [hangu.i] n anti-Japan ese
항일투사 [hangu.iltusa] n anti-
Japanese fighter
항도자 [hyangdoja] n leader
허리 [hori] n waist
허 [hyo] n tongue
혁명 [hyongmyong] n revolution
혁명가 [hyongmyong.ga] n revolu-
tionary
혁명렬사릉 [hyongmyongryolsa
nung] n revolutionary marty-
rs' cemetery
혁명박물관 [hyongmyongbangmul
wan] n revolutionary museum
혁명사상 [hyongmyongsasang] n
revolutionary ideas
혁명적 [hyongmyongjok] n revolutionary
혁명하다 [hyongmyonghada] vi make revolution
혁신 [hyoksin] n innovation
현관 [hyon-gwan] n front door, entrance
현대적 [hyondaejok] n modern
현명하다 [hyonmyonghada] a wise develop
현상하다 [hyonsanghada] vt demonstrate
현실적 [hyonsiljok] n real
현저하다 [hyonjohada] a remarkable
혈압 [hyorap] n blood pressure
협동농민 [hyopdongnongmin] n co-operative peasant
협동화 [hyopdonghwa] n co-organization
협정 [hyopjong] n agreement
형 [hyong] n elder brother
형제 [hyongje] n brother
형제국가 [hyongjegukga] n fraternal country
형제당 [hyongjedang] n fraternal party al
형제적 [hyongjejok] n fraternal
호 [ho] n number
호수 [hosu] n lake
호실 [hosil] n room
호실관리원 [hosilgwalliwon] n chambermaid
혹은 [hogun] ad or
혼자 [honja] n alone
후계자 [hugyeja] n successor
후대 [hudaej] n coming generation
후추가루 [huchuggaru] n pepper
후예 [hue] n dat after
출롱하다 [hullyunghada] a fine
휴게실 [hyugyesil] n lounge
휴식 [hyusik] n rest; interval
흐르다 [huruda] vi flow
흐리다 [hurida] a cloudy
흥미 [hungmi] n interest
힘 [him] n power, might
힘살 [himsal] n muscles
힘껏 [himggot] ad with all one's strength
해 [hae] n sun
해 [hae] n year
해돋이 [haedoji] n sunrise
해방 [haebang] n liberation
해방되다 [haebangdoeda] vi be liberated
해방하다 [haebanghada] vt liberate
해빛 [haetbbit] n sunshine
핵무기 [haengmugi] n nuclear
핵 [haem] n ham [weapons
행복 [haengbok] n happiness
행복하다 [haengbokada] a happy
행성 [haengsong] n planet
행진하다 [haengjinghada] vi march
해여지다 [heyojida] vi part from
회견 [hoegyon] n interview
회담 [hoedam] n talk
회복되다 [hoebokdoeda] vi be recovered
회복하다 [hoebokada] vt recover
회화 [hoehwa] n conversation
회의 [hoeui] n meeting
회다 [huida] a white
화장품 [hwajangpum] n cosmetic
화학 [hwahak] a chemistry
화환 [hwahwan] n wreath
화요일 [hwayoil] n Tuesday
환호 [hwanko] n cheer
환호하다 [hwanhohada] vi cheer
환영 [hwanyong] n welcome
환영하다 [hwanyonghada] vt welcome
활짝 [hwaljak] ad widely

knife [gg]

까부시다 [ggabusida] vt break
g 같다 [ggakda] vt pare, shear, shave
gｙ나크 [ggonyaku] n cognac
g웃오 [ggoggio] ad cock-a-doodle-doo
g睹 [ggok] ad exactly
g睹 [ggot] n flower
g睹다발 [ggotdabal] n bouquet; bunch of flowers [bud]
g睹망울 [ggonmang-ul] n flower
g睹방 [ggotbang] n florist's shop

knife [gg]

곡 [ggul] n honey
곡 [ggum] n dream
곡 [ggut] n end
끌내다 [ggunnada] vi finish
끌내다 [ggunnaeda] causat vt finish
끼다 [ggida] vt put on
깨다 [ggaeda] vt break
깐끗하다 [ggaeggutada] a clean
깐우다 [ggaeda] causat vt wake
객 [ggwa] ad pretty

knife [gg]

따라가다 [ddaragada] vt follow
따로 [ddaro] ad apart
따르다 [ddaruda] vt follow
따사롭다 [ddasaropda] a warm
따뜻하다 [ddaddutada] a warm
딸 [ddal] n daughter
딸기 [ddalg] n strawberry
딸라 [ddalla] n dollar
땀 [ddam] n sweat
땀 [ddang] n earth
떠나다 [ddonada] vi, vt leave

knife [gg]

떠난곳 [ddonangot] n place of departure
떠매다 [ddomedada] vt shoulder
떡 [ddok] n rice-cake
떨다 [ddolda] vi tremble
떨어지다 [ddorojida] vi fall
또한 [ddohan] ad too, also
뛰렇하다 [dduryotada] a clear
뜨겁다 [ddugopda] a hot
뜨다 [dduda] vi float
때 [ddae] n time
때문 [ddaemun] incomp n reason
بة [bb]

بة [bbada] n butter
بةر [bbaruda] a quick, fast
بالتج [bbalgata] a red
باشر [bballil] ad quickly, fast
باشرز [bballajip] n laundry
باشرجا [bbaljisan] n partisan
باشر [bbang] n bread
باشر [bbayam] n cheek

بةس [bbosu] n bus
بةسجروعوس [bbosyongjryuso] n bus stop
بة [bbyo] n bone
باشر [bbotu] n boat
باشرنا [bbunmananira] phrase not only..., but ...

سا [ss]

سا1 [ssada] a cheap
سا2 [ssada] vt wrap
ساوعد [ssauda] vi fight
ساوم [ssauum] n fight
صال [ssal] n rice
سأ [ssang] n pair
ساتا [ssata] vt pile up, heap
سندا [ssida] pass be piled
سناوما [ssoonota] v with con fo

سف [ssuda] vt register
سف1 [ssuda] a bitter
سف2 [ssuda] vt write
سف3 [ssuda] vt put on
سف4 [ssuda] vt use
سفدا [ssuida] pass be written
سفدا [ssulda] vt sweep fed
سفدجاجدا [ssitgida] pass be wash-
سفداجدا [ssitda] vt wash

سج [jj]

سجدا [jjada] vt weave
سكم [jjak] n pair; piece
سكمدا [jjapda] a short

سكممان [jjman] n pair; piece
سكمدا [jjitda] vt tear socks
سج [jjae] suffix "order"

أ [a] int oh!
أنا [ani] ad not
أنا [anida] a not

أناحيدا1 [anihada] a not
أناحيدا2 [anihada] vt not
أناحيدا3 [anihada] n son

405
아름다움 [arumdaum] n beauty
아름답게 [arumdapge] a ad fo beautifully
아름답다 [arumdapda] a beautifully
아래에 [araee] n dat below
아마 [ama] ad perhaps
아무 [amu] pron anyone
아무리 [amuri] ad how
아메리카 [amerika] n America
아버지 [aboji] n father (in the meaning of respect)
아버지 [aboji] n father
아세아 [asea] n Asia
아버지 [ajossi] n uncle
 아주 [aju] ad very
 아주 [ajik] ad still
 아침 [achim] n morning
 아침노을 [achimnoul] n morning glow / fast
 아침식사 [achimsiksa] n break-
 아프다 [apuda] a painful
 아프리카 [apurika] n Africa
 아홉 [ahop] num nine
 아홉번째 [ahopbonjjae] num ninth
 아홉 [ahun] num ninety
 아끼다 [aggida] vt spare
 아이 [ai] n child
 아이고 [aigo] int ah!
 안 [an] ad not
 안경 [an-gyong] n glasses
 안개 [an-gae] n fog
 안과의사 [an-gwauisa] n oculist
 안녕 [annyong] n well-being
 안녕하다 [annyonghada] a well
 안녕하셔 [annyongsode] vt show
 안녕하디 [annyonghada] vi, vt keep quiet
 안해 [anhae] n wife
 안다 [anda] vt embrace
 안마 [anma] n massage
 안정하다 [anjonghada] vi, vt
 아름다움 [annaewon] n guide
 안다 [anda] vt embrace
 안마 [anma] n massage
 안정하다 [anjonghada] vi, vt keep quiet
 안해 [anhae] n wife
 안다 [anda] vi sit
 악하다 [anchida] causat v set
 안하다1 [anta] a not
 안하다2 [anta] vt not
 알곡 [algok] n grain
 알게 되다 [alge toeda] v with
 ad fo get aquainted with, get to know
 알다 [alda] vt know la mottled
 알락달락하다 [allakdallakada]
 알리다 [allida] causat v let
 know, inform
 알다 [alta] vi, vt be ill
 암박 [apbak] n oppression
 암박하다 [apbakada] vt oppress
 알날 [ammnal] n future
 알문 [ammun] n front gate
 앞으로 [apuro] n inst forward
 앞에 [ape] n dat before
 야 [ya] int oh!
 약1 [yak] n medicine
 약2 [yak] pre-n about
 약간 [yakgan] n few, little
 약국 [yakguk] n pharmacy
 약속하다 [yaksokada] vt promise
 약수 [yaksu] n mineral water
 약하다 [yakada] a weak
 양고기 [yang-gogi] n mutton
 양복 [yangbok] n clothes
 양복점 [yangbokjom] n tailor
 양다 [yatda] a shallow [shop
 어 느 [onu] pron which
 어둠다 [odupda] a dark
어디 [odi] pron what place
어디에 [odie] pron dat where
어디에서나 [odiesona] pron loc everywhere
어렵다 [oryopda] a difficult
어른 [orun] n adult
어리다 [orida] a young
어린이 [orin] n child
어머니 [omoni] n mother
어머님 [omonim] n mother (in the meaning of respect)
어부 [obu] n fisherman
여서 [oso] ad please
어지럽다 [ojiroopa] a giddy; dirty
여제 [oje] n yesterday
어촌 [ochon] n fishing village
어깨 [oggae] n shoulder
어깨가 [oddoke] a ad fo how
어떻다 [oddota] a any
어찌 [oji] ad how
역 [ok] num hundred million
역세게 [oksege]a ad fo firmly
역암 [ogap] n oppression
언덕 [ondok] n hill
언제 [onje] pron when
언제나 [onjena] ad always
언어 [ono] n language
얼굴 [olgul] n face
얼다 [olda] vi freeze
얼마 [olma] pron how many, how much
얼마나 [olmana] ad how
얼음 [orum] n ice
얼음보송이 [orumbosung-i] n ice-cream
없이 [opsi] ad without
여기 [yogi] pron this place
여기로 [yogiro] pron inst here, to this place
여기에 [yogie] pron dat here
여덟 [yodol] num eight
여덟 번째 [yodol(bon)jae] num eighth
여든 [yodun] num eighty
여러 [yoro] pre-n many
여름 [yorum] n summer
여보십시오 [yobosipsio] int hullo
여섯 [yosot] num six [sixth
여섯 번째 [yosot(bon)jae] num
여위다 [yowida] vi become thin
역 [yok] n (railway) station
역할 [yokal] n role
연극 [yon-guk] n performance
연단 [yondan] n platform
연설 [yonsol] n speech
연설하다 [yonsolhada] vi make speech
연필 [yonpil] n pencil
연회 [yohoe] n banquet hall
연회장 [yohoejang] n banquet
열1 [yol] n heat
열2 [yol] num ten
열다 [yolda] vi open
열두 [yoldu] num twelve
열두 번째 [yoldu(bon)jae] num twelfth
열둘 [yoldul] num twelve
열리다 [yollida] pass be opened
열심히 [yolsimi] ad diligently
열쇠 [yolsoe] n key
열하나 [yolhana] num eleven
열한 [yolhan] num eleven
열한 번째 [yolhan(bon)jae]
num eleventh
열째 [yoljjae] num tenth
열다 [jopda] a thin
엽서 [jopso] n postcard
영국 [yong·guk] n England
영국사람 [yong·guksaram] n Englishman
영광 [yong·gwang] n glory
영광스럽다 [yong·gwangsuropda] a glorious
영사조사전 [yongjosajon] n English-Korean dictionary
영화 [yonghwa] n film house
영화관 [yonghwagwan] n cinema
영어 [yong·o] n English
영어판 [yong·open] n English edition
영웅하다 [yong·yonghada] a heroic
영웅 [yong·ung] n hero
영웅적 [yong·ungjok] n heroic
영예 [yong·ye] n honour
영예롭다 [yong·yeropda] a honourable
영원하다 [yong·wonhada] a eternal
영원히 [yong·woni] ad forever
오 [o] num five
오 [o] int oh!, o!
오늘 [onul] n today
오다 [oda] vi come
오르다 [oruda] vi rise; get on
오른쪽 [orunjok] n right side
오리불고기 [oribulgogi] n roast duck
오십 [osip] num fifty
오전 [ojon] n beforenoon
오전에 [ojone] n dat in the beforenoon
오직 [ojik] ad only
오한 [ohan] n chill
오 후 [ohu] n, afternoon
오 후에 [ohue] n dat in the afternoon
오빠 [obba] n elder brother
오이 [oi] n cucumber
오월 [owol] n May
오 [on] pre-n whole
올리다 [ollida] causat vt raise
올해 [olhae] n this year
올다 [olta] a right
옷 [ot] n clothes [cloakroom]
옷을기 나는곳 [onmatginungot] n
웅호하다 [onghoha] vt defend
욕구하다 [yoguhada] vt demand
요드링크 [yodutingku] n iodine
요람 [yoram] n cradle [tincture
요일 [yoil] n weekday
용감하다 [yong·gamhada] a brave
용감히 [yong·gami] ad bravely
용기 [yong·gi] n courage
용무 [yongmu] n business, affair
용맹 [yongmaeng] n courage
용서하다 [yongsohada] vt forgive
우리 [uri] pron we
우뢰 [uroe] n thunder
우산 [usang] n umbrella
우편 [upyon] n post
우편국 [upyon·guk] post office
우편료금 [upyonryogum] n posta-
ge
우편함 [upyonham] n letter box
우편 엽서 [(upyon)yopso] n
postcard
우표 [upyo] n stamp
우연히 [uyoni] ad by chance
우에 [ue] n dat above
운동 [undong] n movement
운명 [unmyong] n destiny
운전수 [unjonsu] n driver
운하 [unha] n canal
솔다 [ulda] vi weep weep
울리다1 [ullida] causat v make
울리다2 [ullida] vi sound
움직이다 [umjigida] vi, vt move
웃기다 [utgida] causat v make laugh
웃다 [utda] vi, vt laugh
웃웃 [udot] n coat
움대하다 [ungdaehada] a grand
움장하다 [ungjanghada] a grand, magnificent
유감스럽게 [yugamseupogte] a ad to one's regret
유격구 [yugyokgu] n guerrilla area, partisan area
유격대원 [yugyokdaewon] n guer
유리 [yuri] n glass l rilla
유명하다 [yumyonghada] a famous
유치원 [yuchiwon] n kindergarten
유쾌하다 [yukwaehada] a pleasant
유일쳐 [yuiljok] n undivided
으뜸 [uddum] n first
은 [un] n silver
은행 [unhaeng] n bank
율다 [upda] vt recite
음식 [umsik] n food
음악 [umak] n music
음악가 [umakga] n musician
음악회 [umakoe] n concert
응 [ung] int yes
응답 [ungdang] ad naturally
응접실 [ungjopsil] n drawing room
이1 [i] num two
이2 [i] pron this
이기다 [igida] vi win
이렇게 [iroke] a ad fo so
이렇다 [irota] a such
이르다 [iruda] vi arrive
이름 [irum] n name
이리 [iri] ad so
이마 [ima] n forehead
이미 [imi] ad already ltribute.
이바지하다 [ibajihada] vi con-
이발 [ibbal] n tooth
이상 [isang] n more than
이슬 [isul] n dew
이십 [isip] num twenty
이제 [ije] n now
2층 [ichung] n first floor
이야기 [iyagi] n story
2인용 방 [iinyong bang] n twin-
bedded room
이월 [iwal] n February
익다 [ikda] vi ripen
인도하다 [indohada] vt lead
인민 [inmin] n people
인민경제 [inmingyongje] n
national economy l Army
인민군 [inmingun] n People's
인민군대 [inmin.gundae] n Peo-
ple's Army
인민대중 [inmindaejung] n mas-
es of the people
인민대학습당 [inmindaeaksup
dang] n Grand People's Study
House
인민문화궁전 [inminmunhwagung
jon] n People's Palace of
Culture
인민정권 [inminjong·gwon] n people's power
인민학교 [inminhakgyo] n primary school
인사 [insa] n greeting
인사하다 [insahada] vi greet
인상술 [insamsul] n insam wine, ginseng wine
인상 [insang] n impression
인체 [inche] n human body
인테리 [interi] n intellectual
인형 [inhyang] n doll
일 [il] n work
일 [il] num one
일 [il] n day
일곱 [ilgop] num seven
일곱 ( 번째) [ilgop (bon) jjae] num seventh
일다 [ilda] vi rise
일등 [ildung] n first class
일등급 [ildung-gup] n first class
일방 [ilbang] n one side
일시적 [ilsijok] n temporary
일식 [ilsik] n set
일층 [ilchung] n ground floor
일하다 [ilhada] vi work
일흔 [ilhun] num seventy
일찌기 [iljjigi] ad early
일찍 [iljjik] ad early
일어나다 [ironada] vi take place; rise
일요일 [iryoil] n Sunday
일요일에 [iryoire] n dat on Sunday
임용방 [irinyong bang] n single room
일월 [irwol] n January
읽다 [ikda] vt read
없다 [ilta] vt lose
임무 [immu] n task
입 [ip] n mouth
입구 [ipgu] n entrance
입국 [ipguk] n entry
입국수속 [ipguksusok] n entry procedures
입다 [ipda] vt put on
입술 [ipsul] n lip
입원하다 [ibwonhada] vi go to hospital
잉크 [ingku] n ink
잊다 [itda] vt forget
잎 [ip] n leaf
있다 [itda] vi there is, be
애 [ae] n child
애국주의 [aegukjuui] n patriotism
애기 [aeqi] n baby
애쓰다 [aessuda] v with n exert oneself
애 [yae] int hullo
애 [ye] int yes
예순 [yesun] num sixty
예술 [yesul] n art
예술축전 [yesulchukjon] n art festival
외교 [oegyo] n diplomacy
외교관 [oegyogwan] n diplomat
외국 [oeguk] n foreign country
외국어 [oegugo] n foreign language
외국인 [oegugin] n foreigner
외과의사 [oeggwauisa] n surgeon
외출하다 [oechulhada] vi go out
외루 [oetu] n overcoat
외쪽 [oenijok] n left side
위 [wi] n stomach
위대하다 [widaehada] a great
ENGLISH - KOREAN VOCABULARY

abolish 철폐하다 [cholpehada] vt
abolition 철폐 [cholpe] n
about 관하여 [kwanhayo] v con fo; 대략 [taeryak] n; 약 [yak]
adult [orun] n
above 우에 [ue] n dat
absorbent cotton 탈지면 [talji myon] n
academy of sciences 과학원 [kwa hagwon] n
accept 받아들이다 [padadurida] vt
account 계산서 [kye sanso] n
achieve 달성하다 [talsonghada] vt
acrobatics 교예 [kyoye] n
actively 적극적으로 [ckokgukjoguro] n inst
actor 배우 [paeu] n
address 주소 [chuso] n
addresssee 받는 사람 [pannunsaram] n with att fo
adhesive tape 반창고 [panchanggo] n
admire 감탄하다 [kamtanhada] vi
adult 어른 [orun] n
advance 나아가다 [naagada] vi
Africa 아프리카 [apurika] n
after 후에 [hue] n dat
afternoon 오후 [ohu] n
again 다시 [tasi] ad
age 나이 [nai] n; 살 [sal] n
agenda 의정 [uijong] n
aggression 침략 [chimryak] n
aggressor 침략자 [chimryakja] n
agreement 협정 [hyopjong] n
agricultural 농업의 [nongobui] n
Asia 아세아 [asea] n
ask 묻다 [mutda] vi, vt
assort 고르다 [koruda] vt
at any cost 기어이 [kioi] ad
attention 주의 [chuui] n
attitude 태도 [taedo] n
August 괴월 [parwol] n

authority 권위 [kwanwi] n
automation 자동화 [chadonghwa] n
autumn 가을 [kaul] n
aviation 항공 [hang-gong] n
ax 도끼 [toggi] n
azalea 진달래 [chindallae] n

B

baby 애기 [aegi] n
back 뒤 [twi] n; 등 [tung] n
bad 나쁜 [nabbun] a att fo
bag 가방 [kabang] n
baggage 짐 [chim] n
ball 공 [kong] n
ballet 바레무용 [paremuyong] n
banana 바나나 [panana] n
bandage 붕대 [pungdaes] n
bank 은행 [unhaeng] n
banquet 연회 [yonhoe] n
banquet hall 연회장 [yonhoejang]
barbarity 만행 [manhaeng] n
barber 리발사 [ribalsa] n
barber's shop 리발소 [ribalso] n
barely 겨우 [kyou] ad
barrel 통 [tong] n
base 기지 [kiji] n
basis 기본 [kibon] n
bath 목욕탕 [mogyoktang] n
bath-room 목욕실 [mogyoksil] n
bathe 목욕하다 [mogyokada] vi
bathing 목욕 [mogyok] n
battle 전투 [chontu] n
be 이다 [ida] end; 있다 [itda] vi;
계시다 [kyesida] vi
be born 태어나다 [taeyonada] vi,
출생하다 [chulsaenghada] vi,
boy 소년 [sonyon] n
branch 가지 [kaji] n, 부문 [pumun]
brane 용감한 [yong.gamhan] a att fo
bravely 용감히 [yong.gami] ad
breads 빵 [bbang] n
break 계다 [ggaeda] vt: 키부시다
[babusida] vt
breakfast 아침식사 [achimsiksa] n; 아침식사를 하는 [achimsiksa rul hada] v with n
breast 가슴 [kasum] n
bridge 다리 [tari] n
bright 밝은 [palgun] a att fo
brilliant 찬연한 [chanyonhan] a
att fo
bring 가져오다 [kajyooada] vt; 가져다주다 [kajyodajuda] vt
broad daylight 태양 [taenat] n
broadcast 방송하다 [pangsong . ha da] vt
broadcasting 방송 [pangsong] n
brother 형제 [hyongje] n
build 건설하다 [konsolhada] vt
burn 불리다 [pultada] vi
burn up 타오르다 [taoruda] vi
burst �裂지다 [tojida] vi
bus 버스 [bbosu] n [so] n
bus stop 버스정류소 [bbosujeongryu u
busily 바삐 [pabbi] ad; 바쁘게
[pabbuge] a ad fo
business 용무 [yongmu] n
busy 바쁜 [pabgun]; a att fo
but 그러나 [kurona] ad; 그렇지만
[kurochiman] a con fo; 그런데
[kuronde] a con fo
butter 빼다 [bbada] n
buy 사다 [sada] vt
buzz [pungbung] ad
by 의하여 [uihayo] v con fo
by air mail 항공편 [hang, gong]

by chance 우연히 [uyoni] ad

C

celebrate 쇼다 [soeda] vt
central 중심의 [chungsimui] n

centre 중심 [chungsim] n; 중앙 [chung. ang] n
certainly 반드시 [pandusi] ad
certificate 증명서 [chungmyoungso] n
choir 의자 [uija] n; 결장 [kol sang] n; 강좌 [kangjwa] n
chairman 위원장 [wiwonjang] n
Chajusong 자주성 [chajussong] n
chambermaid 호실관리원 [hosilgwal liwon] n
champagne 삼광주 [syampangju] n
change변하다 [pyonhada] vi, vt
Changgwangsan Hotel 창광산려관
[chang.gwangsan ryogwan] n
character 성격 [song.gyok] n; 품성 [pumsong] n
cheap 녹은 [nugun] a att fo, 산 [ssan] a att fo
cheek 뽕 [bbyam] n
cheer 환호 [hwanho] n; 환호하다 [hwanhohada] vi
cheese 치즈 [chiju] n
chemistry 화학 [hwa'hak] n
chess 장기 [chang.gi] n
chestnut 밤 [pam] n
chicken 닭고기 [takgogi] n
child 아이 [ai] n, 애 [ae] n; 어린이 [orini] n

cabbage 가두배추 [kadubaechu] n
cake 과자 [kwaja] n; 생과자 [saeng.gwaja] n
calendar 달력 [tallyok] n
calf 장난지 [changddanji] n
call 부르다 [puruda] vt

call (a person) on the telephone 전화를 걸다 [chonhwaru kolda] v with n
camera 사진기 [sajin.gi] n
camera shop 사진물상점 [sajin yongpumssangjom] n
canal 운하 [unha] n [vt
cancel 취소하다 [chwisohada] vi,
cannot 못하다 [motada] vt
capitain 선장 [sonjang] n; 책임 비행사 [chaegimbihaengsa] n
capital 수도 [sudo] n
capitalism 자본주의 [chabonjuui] n
capitalist 자본가 [chabon.ga] n;
자본주의적 [chabonjuuijok] n
car 차 [cha] n, 자동차 [chadong cha] n
carry 나르다 [naruda] vt
carry out 해내다 [haenaeda] v

with con fo; 수행하다 [suhaeng.hada] vt

[got] n
cash-desk 돈받는곳 [tonbannun.
catch 잡다 [chapda] vt
catch cold 감기들다 [kamgidulda]
phrase
ceasefire 정전 [chongjon] n

pyon] n
Children's Union member 소년단원 [sonyondanwon] n
chill 오한 [ohan] n
chocolate 초콜렛 [chyonkolletu] n
Chollima 천리마 [chollima] n
Chollima Statue 천리마동상 [chollimadongsang] n
chopsticks 저가락 [choggarak] n
chorus 합창 [hapchang] n
cigarette 담배 [tambae] n; 가치 담배 [kachidambae] n [gwann] n
cinema house 영화관 [yonghwa] n
circus 교예 [kyoye] n; 교예극장 [kyoyegukjang] n
citizen 공민 [kongmin] n
city 도시 [tosi] n
city bus 시내버스 [sinaebbosu] n
city centre 시내 [sinae] n
city sightseeing 시내구경 [sinaeguyong] n
city sightseeing bus 시내관광버스 [sinaegwane, gwangbbosu] n
claim tag 징표 [chimpyo] n
class 계급 [kyegup] n; 학급 [hakgup] n
classical music 교전음악 [kojonumak] n
classroom 교실 [kyosil] n [fo]
clean 깨끗한 [ggaeggutan] a att fo
clear 맑은 [malgun] a att fo
clima 기후 [kihu] n
cloakroom 옷만가는곳 [onmatginun] n, 손님맞기는곳 [sonjim got] n

matginungot] n
cloth 천 [chyon] n

clothes 옷 [ot] n, 양복 [yangbok] n
cloud 구름 [kurum] n
cloudy 호린 [hurin] a att fo
clubhouse 구락부 [kurakbu] n
coil 석탄 [soktan] n
coil-miner 탄부 [tanbu] n
coin 웡웃 [udot] n 4 o ad
cock-a-doodle-doo 조끼오 [ggoggi] n
cocoa 코코아 [koko] n
coffee 커피 [kopi] n
cognac 꼬나크 [ggonyaku] n
cold 감기 [kanggi] n; 추운 [chun] a att fo, 찬 [chan] a att fo
collective 집단 [chipdan] n
college 대학 [taehak] n
colour 색 [saek] n; 색갈 [saekgal] n
comb 빗 [pit] n; 빗다 [pitda] vt
combination 결합 [kyolhap] n
come together 모이다 [moida] vi
pass
coming generation 후대 [huda] n
commemoration 기념 [kinyom] n
commerce 상업 [sangop] n
committee 위원회 [wiwonhoe] n
communication 교통 [kyotong] n
communiqué 콤뮤니케이 [kommyunki] n

communism 공산주의 [kongsanju]
communist 공산주의자 [kongsanjuujok] n; 공산주의적 [kongsanjuujok] n

compartment 침대칸 [chimdae] n
complicated 복잡한 [pokjapan] a
att fo
composer 작곡가 [chakgokga] n
comrade 동무 [tongmu] n, 동지
[tongji] n
comrade-in-arms 전우 [chonu] n
concert 음악회 [umakoe] n
conclude 맺다 [maetda] vt
conclusion 체결 [chegyol] n
concurrently 겪 [kyom] ad
condition 조건 [choggon] n
conductor 차장 [chajang] n
confront 대하다 [taehada] vt
congratulate 축하하다 [chukahada]
vt, 경축하다 [kyongchukada] vt
congratulation 축하 [chuka] n
congratulatory telegram 축전 [chuk jon] n
connection 연결 [ryon-gyol] n
considerably 상당히 [sangdang-i] ad
construction 건설 [konsol] n
consul 영사 [ryongsa] n
consulate 봉사관 [ryongsagwan] n
continue 계속하다 [kyesokada] vt
continuously 빈이어 [ryonio] ad; 계속 [kyesok] n
contract 계약 [kyeyak] n
contribute 이바지하다 [ibajihada]
vi [att fo
convenient 권리한 [pyollihan] a
conversation 회화 [hoehwa] n
cook 취사원 [chwisawon] n
cool 시능한 [sonulhan] a att fo
co-operative peasant 협동농민
[hyopdongnongmin] n
coop-erativization 협동화 [hyop
donghwa] n
copy 부 [pu] n
corridor 복도 [pokdo] n
cosmetic 화장품 [hwajangpum] n
cost 값이 둔다 [kapsi tulda] phrase
cough 기침 [kichim] n; 기침하다
[kichimhada] vi
count 세다 [sedan] vt, 계산하다
[kyesanhada] vt
counter 계산대 [kyesandae] n
country 나라 [nara] n
county 군 [kun] n
courage 용기 [yong-gi] n, 용맹
[yongmaeng] n
cover 빗다 [topda] vt
cow 소 [so] n
coward 비겁한자 [pigopanja] n
cradle 요람 [yoram] n
crawl 기다 [kida] vi 
v
create 창조하다 [changjohada] vi,
credentials 신임장 [sinimjang] n
cross 전느냐다 [konnuda] vi, vt
crossing 건너가는곳 [konnogun
_got] n
crossroad 심자로 [sipjaro] n
crosswalk 전등거리 [konnogil] n
cry 소리치다 [sorichida] v with n
cucumber 오이 [oi] n
cultural clubhouse 문화회관 [mun
hwahoegwan] n [gungjon] n
cultural palace 문화관전 [munhwa
cultural revolution 문화혁명 [mun
hwahyongmyong] n
culture 문화 [munhwa] n
cup 잔 [chan] n
curio 괴장품 [koldongpum] n
curio shop 과장품상점 [koldong
pumsangjom] n
custom 풍습 [pungsup] n
customs 관세 [kwans] n; 세관

[segwan] n

cut 자르다 [charuda] vt

dance 춤 [chum] n
dancer 무용가 [muyong ga] n
danger 위험 [wihom] n
dark 어두운 [oduun] a att fo
date 날짜 [nalja] n
date of birth 날달 [nannal] n
daughter 딸 [ddal] n
dawn 밤다 [pakda] a; 동그라
[tong tuda] phrase

day 날 [nal] n, 일 [il] n
day train 날차 [natcha] n
daytime 낮 [nat] n att fo
dazzling 눈부신 [nunbusin] a att

dear 친애하는 [chinaehanun] v

death 죽음 [chugum] n att fo
debate 토론하다 [toronhada] vi, vt; 론토
[roneonhada] vt; 토론 [toron] n, 론토 [ron jaeng] n
debater 토론자 [torona] n
debt 빚 [pit] n
December 심이월 [sibiwol] n
decide 결정하다 [kyoljonghada] vt
decisive 결정적 [kyoljongjok] n
decide 신고하다 [sin gohada] vt
depth 깊은 [kipun] a att fo
depthly 깊이 [kipi] ad
defend 지키다 [chikida] vt, 옹호 하다 [onghohada] vt
delegate 사절 [sajol] n; 대표

d [taepyo] n
demarcation line 분계선 [pun gye son] n
democracy 민주주의 [minjujuui] n
democratic 민주주의적 [minjujuui jok] n
demonstrate 펼치다 [ddolchida] vt
dentist 구강과의사 [kugang gwa wisa] n
department 부 [pu] n [jom] n
department store 백화점 [paekwa
departure 출발 [chulbal] n, 출입
[chulguk] n
depth 깊이 [kipi] n
deputy 대의원 [taeiwon] n, 대리인 [taeriin] n
dermatologist 피부과의사 [pibugg wisa] n
desk 책상 [chaeksang] n
dessert 식후사과 [sikudagwa] n
destination 목적지 [mokjokji] n
destination of the journey 목표
지 [ryohaengmokjokji] n
destiny 운명 [unmyong] n
destroy 파괴하다 [pagoehada] vt
destruction 파괴 [pagoe] n
determine 결정하다 [kyolsimhada] vi, vt
develop 발전시키다 [paljonsikida]
causat v; 현상하다 [hyonsangha da] vt
development 발전 [paljon] n
devote 바치다 [pachida] vt
dew 이슬 [isul] n
diarrhoea 설사 [solsa] n
dictatorship 독재 [tokjae] n
dictionary 사전 [sajon] n
die 죽다 [chukda] vi
difference 차이 [chai] n
different 다른 [tarun] a att fo
differently 달리 [talli] ad
difficult 어려운 [oryoun] a att fo
dignity 위신 [wisin] n
diligent 부지런한 [pujironhan] a 
att fo
diligently 부지런히 [pujironi] ad.

diplomacy 외교 [oegyo] n
diplomat 외교관 [oegyogwan] n
direction 방향 [panghyang] n
director 지배인 [chibaein] n
dirty 더러운 [toroun] a att fo.
   어지러운 [ojiroun] a att fo;
   더럽하다 [toropida] vt
disappear 사라지다 [sarajida] vi
discipline 규율 [kyuyul] n
discuss 토의하다 [touihada] vt
dish 료리 [ryori] n
distinguish 구별하다 [kubyolhada]
divide 나누다 [nanuda] vt; 갈라
   지다 [kallajida] vi
do 하다 [hada] vt
do not know 모르다 [moruda] vt
doctor 의사 [uisa] n
dog 개 [kae] n
dogmatism 교조주의 [kyojojuui] n
doll 인형 [inhyong] n
dollar 달라 [ddalla] n
domestic animal 집집승 [chipjim
door 문 [mun] n [sung] n
door of the kitchen 부엌문 [pu
   ongmun] n

drawing room 웅접실 [ungjopsil]
dream 꿈 [ggum] n
drink 마시다 [masida] vt
drive out 몰아내다 [moranaeda]
   vt, 내쫓다 [naejjotda] vt
driver 자동차운전사 [chadongchaun
   jonsu] n, 운전수 [unjonsu] n
drop behind 뒤떨어지다 [twiddor
   ojida] vi
drop in 들리다 [tullida] vi
dry 마른 [marun] v att of
duty 의무 [uim] n
dwelling 살림집 [sallimjip] n, 주
   태 [chutaek] n

each other 서로 [soro] ad
ear 귀 [kw] n [jjigi] ad
eyear 일찍 [iljjik] ad, 일제기 [il
earth 땅 [ddang] n, 지구 [chigu] n
earthenware jar 돗 [tok] n
east 동쪽 [tong(jjok)] n; 동쪽
   의 [tongjjogui] n gen
eyasy 쉬운 [swiun] a att fo
eat 먹다 [mokda] vt, 잡수시다 [chapsusida] vt
economic 경제의 [kyongjeui] n
gen; 경제적 [kyongjejok] n
economy 경제 [kyongje] n
educate 교육하다 [kyoyukada] vt,
교양하다 [kyoyanghada] vt
education 교육 [kyoyuk] n, 교양 [kyoyang] n
educator 교양자 [kyoyangja] n
ey [talgal] n, [num
eight 여덟 [yodol] num, 팔 [pal]
eighth 여덟(번째) [yodol(bon)jjae]
um [palsip] num
eighty 여든 [yodun] num, 팔십
elbow 팔꿈치 [palggumchi] n
elder brother 형 [hyong] n, 오빠 [obba] n
eldest sister 맛누이 [mannui] n
elect 선거하다 [son.gohada] vt
election 선거 [son.go] n
electric 전기의 [chon-giui] n gen
electric train 전기차 [chon.gich a] n
electricity 전기 [chon.gi] n
elevate 높이다 [nopida] vt
elevator 승강기 [sung.gang.gi] n
eleventh 열한(번째)체 [yolhan(bon) jjae] num
embassy 대사관 [taesagwan] n
embrace 안다 [anda] vt
employee 종업원 [chong.obwon] n
encirclement 포위 [powi] n
end 꼴 [ggut] n
enemy 적 [chok] n
engineer 기사 [kisa] n
England 영국 [yong.guk] n
English 영어 [yong.o] n; 영어의 [yong.oui] n gen
English-Korean dictionary 영조사 전 [yong.josajon] n
Englishman 영국 사람 [yong.guk saram] n
enjoy 누리다 [nurida] vt [att fo
enough 충분한 [chungbunhan] a
enterprise 기업소 [kiopso] n
entertain 대접하다 [taejopada] vt
entrance 들어가는 곳 [teojopun.
got] n, 입구 [ipgu] n
entrée 창호식 [chanumsik] n
entrust 맡기다 [matgida] causat v
entry 입국 [ipguk] n
envelope 봉투 [pongto] n
equipment 장비 [changbi] n
era 기원 [kiwon] n; 시대 [sidae] n
escalator 계단식 승강기 [kyedansik sung.gang.gi] n
especially 특히 [tuki] ad, 특별히 [tukbyori] ad
eternal 영원한 [yong.wonhan] a
Europe 구라파 [kurapa] n gen
European 구라파의 [kurapaui] n
European food 구라파음식 [kura paumsik] n
even if 비록 [pirok] ad
evening 저녁 [chonyok] n
every 매 [mae] pre-n
every day 매일 [maeil] n
everywhere 어디에서나 [odieosa]
pron loc
exactly 꼭 [ggok] ad
examination 시험 [sihom] n
exceed 초과하다 [chogwhahada] vi. vt
exchange 교환 [kyohwan] n; 바꾸다 [pagguda] vt. 교환하다 [khyohwanhada] vt
exchange of notes 각서교환 [kak sogyohwan] n  [with n
exert oneself 애쓰다 [aessuda] v
exhibition 전람회 [chollamhoe] n;
전람관 [chollamgwann] n
existence 존재 [chonjae] n
exit 나가는곳 [naganun · got] n;
출국 [chulguk] n

expensive 비싼 [pissan] a att fo
experience 경험 [kyong.hom] n,
체험 [chehom] n  [vt
exploit 착취하다 [chakchhiwhada]
extport 수출 [suchul] n; 수출하다
[suchulhada] vt  [n
export goods 수출품 [suchulpum]
express 표현하다 [pyohyonhada]
:급행렬차 [kupaengryolcha] n
exterior 밖의 [paggui] n gen
eye 눈 [nun] n
eyebrow 눈썹 [nunsoyop] n

face 얼굴 [olgul] n
fact 사실 [sasil] n
factory 공장 [kongjang] n
faithful 충실한 [chungjikan] a
att fo
fall 멀어지다 [ddorojida] vi
fall asleep 잠들다 [chamdulda] vi
family 가족 [kajok] n
family name 성 [song] n
famous 유명한 [yumyong. han] a
att fo
famous spots 명승지 [myongsung ji] n
far 멀 [mon] a att fo
far away 멀리 [molli] ad
fare 표값 [pyoggap] n
farm 농장 [nongjang] n
farmer 농민 [nongmin] n
farmer's hut 농막집 [nongmakjip]
 n., 농막 [nongmak] n

fascism 파시즘 [pasijum] n
father 아버지 [aboji] n
fatherland 조국 [choguk] n
favour 더 좋아하다 [to choahada]
vt with con fo and ad
fear 공포 [kongpo] n; 두려워하다 [turyowohada] vt
February 이월 [iwol] n
feel 느끼다 [nuggida] vt
female 녀자 [nyoja] n
fertilizer 비료 [piryo] n
festival 축전 [chukjon] n
festival day 명절 [myongjol] n
few 적은 [chogun] a att fo; 약간
[yakgan] ad
fibre 섬유 [somyu] n
field 들 [tul] n. 발 [pat] n
fifth 다섯 번째 [tasot(bon) jja
e] num [num
fifty 십 [swin] num. 오십 [osip]
fight [ssaum] n; 사우다 [ssa uda] vi
fighter 루사 [tusa] n
figure 수자 [sujja] n [lim] n
film 영화 [yong.hwa] n, 필름 [pil
fine 훈문한 [hullyung.han] a att
fo
finger 손가락 [son.garak] n
fingernail 손톱 [sontop] n
finish 끝내다 [ggunnaed] causat
v; 끝내다 [ggunnada] vi
fire 불 [pul] n
firmly 굳게 [kutge] a ad fo, 역
세계 [oksege] a ad fo
first 먼저 [monjo] ad, 처음 [cho
um] n; 첫(번)째 [chot(bon)
jae] num
fish foods 물고기료 [mulgogiryo
fish soup 생선국 [saengson.guk]n
fisherman 어부 [obu] n
fishing village 어촌 [ochon] n
fit 맞다 [matda] vi
five 다섯 [tasot] num, 오 [o] num
fizzy drink 사이다 [saida] n
flag 깔발 [kitbal] n, 기치 [ki
chi] n
flesh 살 [sal] n
flight number 항로번호 [hangro
bonho] n
float 띄다 [dduda] vi
floor 바닥 [padak] n, 층 [chung]
floorist's shop 꽃방 [ggotbang] n
flow 호르다 [huruda] vi
flower 꽃 [ggot] n
flower bud 꽃망울 [ggonmang.ul]n
fly 날다 [nalda] vi
fog 안개 [an.gae] n [yong] n
folk dance 민족무용 [minjongmu
folk song 민요 [minyo] n
follow 따르다 [ddaruda] vt, 따라
가다 [ddaragada] vt
food 음식 [umsik] n
foodstuff 식료품 [singryopum] n
foot 발 [pal] n
football 축구 [chukgu] n
football player 축구선수 [chukgu
sonsu] n
football team 축구팀 [chukgutim]
for 위하여 [wihayo] v con fo, 대
하여 [taehayo] v con fo
for a while 잠시 [chamsi] ad
for ever 영원히 [yong.woni]ad
for oneself 스스로 [susuro] ad
for the first time 비로소 [piro
so] ad
fore 앞 [ap] n
forehead 이마 [ima] n
foreign 외국의 [oegugui] n gen.
대외적 [taeoejok] n, 외 국의
[ddan kosui]n gen with pre-n
foreign country 외국 [oeguk] n
foreign language 외국어 [oegugo]n
foreign trade 대외무역 [taeoemu
yok] n
foreigner 외국인 [oegugin] n
foreword 머리말 [morimal] n
forget 잊다 [itda] vt
forgive 용서하다 [yongsohada] vt
fork 포크 [poku] n
forked road 갈림길 [kallimgil] n
forty 마흔 [mahun] num; 사십
[sasip] num
forward 앞으로 [apuro] n inst
foundation 기초 [kicho] n, 근본
[kunbon] n
fountain 분수 [punsu] n
fountain-pen 만년필[mannyonpil] n
fourth 네번째[nebonjjae]num, 넷째[netjjae]num
fraternal 형제적[hyongjejok]n
fraternal country 형제국가[hyongjegukga]n
fraternal party 형제당[hyongje]n
freeze 얼다[olda]vi
fresh egg 생닭알[saengdalgal]
Friday 금요일[kumyoil]n
friend 넷[pot]n, 친구[chin.gu]
friendship 친선[chinson]n


from 부터[puto]aux end
from (the bottom of) one's heart 충심으로[chungsimuro]ninst
front 전선[chonson]n
front desk 접수[chospsu]n
front door 현관[hyon.gwan]n
front gate 문[taemun]n
fruit 과일[kwail]n, 과실[kwasil]n
fruit juice 과일즙[kwailjup]n
full 가득한[kadukan] adj
function 기능[kinung]n
future 앞날[amnal]n, 미래[miraе]

gains 전취물[chonchwil]n
garden 마당[madang]n
gate 문[mun]n
gauze 가제[kaje]n
general 장군[chang.gun]n
general secretary 총비서[chongbiso]n
generation 세대[sedae]n, 세대[tae]
get aquainted with 알게 되다[a]ge
toeda] vi with ad fo
get down 내리다[narida] vi
get on 하다[tada]vt
get tired 피곤하다[pigonhada]a
giddy 어지러운[ojiroun]a
get a performance 상연하다[sang
get back 돌려주다[tollyojuda]vt
gladder 기분[kibbun]a
gladly 반가이[pan.gai]ad
glasses 안경[an.gyong]n
glitter 번짝거리다[ponjokgorida]
v, vt
glorious 영광스러운[yong.gwang suroun]a
hand[hand]n
gloves 장갑[chang.gap]n
go 가다[kada]vt
go (by vehicles) 타고 가다[taekoda] v with con fo
go back 돌아가다[toragada]vi, vt
go out 나가다[nagada]vi, 외출하다[oechulhada]vt
go through the formalities 수속하다[susokada]vt
go up [sotda] vt
goal 목표 [mokpyo] n
gold 금 [kum] n
good 좋은 [choun] a att fo
goods 물건 [mulgon] n, 몰품 [mul pum] n
govern 지배하다 [chibaehada] vt
graduate 졸업하다 [choropada] vt
grain 알곡 [algok] n
grammar 문법 [munbop] n
grand 왕대한 [ungdaehan] a att fo, 왕장한 [ungjanghan] a att fo
Grand People's Study House 인민대학습당 [inmindaeahaksup dang] n
Grand Theatre 대극장 [taeguk]
grandfather 할아버지 [haraboji] n
grandmother 할머니 [halmoni] n
grape wine 포도주 [podosul] n
grapes 포도 [podo] n
grass 풀 [pul] n
gratis 무상의 [musang. ui] a gen

gray 회색의 [hoesaegui] n gen
great 위대한 [widaehan] a att fo, 거대한 [kodaehan] a att fo
great nature 대자연 [taejayon] n
greet 인사하다 [insahada] vi

greeting 인사 [insa] n
grocer's shop 식료품상점 [singnyo pumsangjom] n
grow 자라다 [charada] vi
grow old 늙다 [nukda] vi
gruel 죽 [chuk] n

guarantee 보증 [pojung] n, n

guerrilla 유격대원 [yugyokdaewon]
guerrilla area 유격구 [yugyokgu] n

guest 손님 [sonnim] n
guide 안내원 [annaewon] n
guide-book 안내서 [annaeso] n

gun 총 [chong] n, 대포 [taepo] n

gymnasium 체육관 [cheyukgwan] n
gymnastics 체조 [chejo] n, 체육 [cheyuk] n

gynaecologist 산부인과의사 [sanbu

H

hair 머리가 [morikal] n
ham 햄 [haem] n
hammer 마치 [mach] n
hand 손 [son] n
hand baggage 손짐 [sonjim] n
hand clapping 박수 [paksu] n
hand over 넘겨주다 [nomgyojuda] vt
handkerchief 손수건 [sonsugon] n
handwriting 글씨 [kulssi] n
hang 걸다 [kolda] vi
happiness 행복 [haengbok] n
happy 행복한 [haengbokan] a att
harbour 항구 [hang. gu] n, l fo

hard 된 [toen] a att fo, 굶은 [kudun] a att fo
harden 다지다 [tajida] vt
hasten 다그치다 [taguchida] vt
hat 모자 [moja] n
hate 증오하다 [chung. ohada] vt
have 가지다 [kajida] vt,' vi
have a meal 식사하다 [siksahada]

have one's hair cut 리발하다 [ribalhada] vi

have sit 앉하다 [anchida] causat
he 그 [ku] pron

head of a delegation 대표단 단장
headache 머리아픔 [morapium] n
health 건강 [kon·gang] n
healthy 건강한 [kon·ganghan] a
att fo
hear 들다 [tutda] vt [um] n
heart 심장 [simjang] n; 마음 [ma
heat 열 [yol] n
heavy 무거운 [mugoun] a att fo
heavy industry 중공업 [chung·
gong·op] n [da] vt
help 방조 [pangjo] n; 돕다 [top
hen 닭 [tak] n
here 여기에 [yogie] pron dat ;여
기로 [yogiro] pron inst
hero 영웅 [yong·ung] n; 주인공
[chuin.gong] n
heroic 영웅한 [yong·yong·han] a
att fo , 영웅적 [yong·ung·jok] n
high 높은 [nopun] a att fo ;높이

imagine 상상하다 [sangsanghada]
immediately 곧 [kot] ad [vt
imperialism 제국주의 [Chegukjuui] n
imperialist 제국주의자 [che[gukju
uija] n
import 수입 [suip] n; 수입하다
[suipada] vt [att fo
important 중요한 [chung·yohan] a
impression 인상 [insang] n
in the afternoon 오후에 [ohue] n
dat [ojone] n dat
in the beforenoon 오전에
in the evening 저녁에 [chonyoge]
inconvenient 불편한 [pulpyonhan] adj
independence 독립 [tongrip] n;
industrialization 공업화 [kong. op]
industry 공업 [kong. op] n [wa] n
information office 물음나무 [murum jok]
individual 개인 [kaein] n
inhabitants 주민 [chumin] n
injection 주사 [chusa] n
ink 잉크 [ingku] n
innovation 혁신 [hyoksin] n
inquiring 물어보기 [murobogi] n
insam wine 인삼술 [insamsul] n
inside 속 [sok] n
inspection of passports 력권검열 [ryoggongomyol] n
insurance 보험 [pohom] n
intellectual 인테리어 [interi] n
interest 흥미 [hungmi] n, 재미 [chiemi] n; 리익 [riik] n
international 국제적 [kukjejok] n
internationalism 국제주의 [kukje jui] n
interpret 통역하다 [tong. yokada]
interpretation 통역 [tong. yok] n
introduce 소개하다 [sogaehada] vt
introduction 소개 [sogaе] n
invitation card 초대장 [chodaeha jiang] n
invite 초대하다 [chodaehada] vt
iodine tincture 요드링크 [yoduting ku] n
iron 쇠 [soe] n, 철 [chol] n;
journalist 기자 [kija] n
joy 기쁨 [kibbun] n
joyful 기쁘 [kibbun] a att fo, 반가운 [pan. gaun] a att fo
joyfully 반가이 [pan. gai] ad
June 월월 [ryuwol] n
Juche Idea 주체사상 [chuchesa]
just as 마치 [machi] ad

January 일월 [irwol] n
jaw 뼈 [tok] n
joint 공통의 [kongdong. ui] n gen;
jon 전 [chon] n (unit of Korean coin)
journalist 기자 [kija] n
joy 기쁨 [kibbun] n
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>K</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>keep 간직하다 [kanjikada] vi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kerchief 머리수건 [morisugon] n</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>key 열쇠 [yolsoe] n</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kim Il Sung Stadium 김일성경 기장 [Kim Il Sung gyung gi jang] n</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kindergarten 유치원 [yuchiwon] n</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kitchen 부엌 [puok] n</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kitchen work 부엌일 [puong nil] n</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>knee 무릎 [murup] n</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>knife 칼 [kal] n</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>know 알다 [alda] vt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>knowledge 지식 [chisik] n</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Korea 조선 [choson] n</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Korean 조선사람 [chosonsaram] n; 조선말 [chosonmal] n, 조선어 [chosono] n; 조선의 [chosonui]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Korean-English dictionary 조-영 사전 [choyongsajon] n</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Korean food 조선음식 [chosonum sik] n</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Korean language 조선말 [choson mal] n, 조선어 [chosono] n</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Korean Peninsula 조선반도 [chosonbando] n [inmin] n</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Korean people 조선인민 [choson]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Korean People's Army 조선인민군 [chosoninmin gun] n</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Korean revolution 조선혁명 [chosonhyongmyong] n</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Korean Revolution Museum 조선 혁명박물관 [chosonhyongmyong bangmulgwan] n</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>L</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>labour 로동 [rodong] n, 로력 [ro ryok] n, 로력영웅 [roryog yong]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>labour hero 로덕영웅 [rodyog yong]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>labour safety 로동안전 [rodong anjon] n</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lake 호수 [hosu] n</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>landing 착륙 [changryuk] n</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>language 말 [mal] n, 언어 [on o] n</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>large 큰 [kun] a att fo , 대 [tae]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>large-scale 대대적 [taedaejok] n</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>last year 지난해 [chinanhae] n</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>late 늦은 [nu jun] a att fo</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Latin America 라틴아메리카 [ra tinamerika] n</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laugh 웃다 [utda] vi, vt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laundry 발래집 [bballaejip] n, 세탁소 [setakso] n, 세탁소네 [setaksone] n</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>law 법 [pop] n, 법령 [pomryong]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lay 눕하다 [nupida] causat v</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lead 인도하다 [indohada] vt, 영도하다 [ryongdohada] vt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leader 지도자 [chidoja] n, 항도자 [hyangdoja] n, 수령 [suryong] n</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leadership 영도 [ryongdo] n</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leading 지도 [chido] n</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leaf 잎 [ip] n</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>learn 배우다 [paeuda] vt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
learning 배우기 [pæugi] n
leave 떠나다 [ddonada] vi, vt, 줄
발하다 [chulbalhada] vi, vt
lecture 강연 [kang. yon] n
left 왼쪽의 [oenjjogui] n gen
leg 다리 [tari] n
lemonade 레몬수 [remonsu] n
length 길이 [kiri] n
less 덜 [tol] ad [ n
lesson 과 [kwa] n; 교훈[kyohon]
lessons 수업 [suop] n
let eat 먹이다 [mogida] causat v
let fly 날리다 [nallida] causat v
let know 알리다 [allida] causat v
let see 보이다 [poida] causat v
letter 글자 [kulja] n, 글 [kul]
n; 먼지 [pyonji] n
letter box 우편함 [upyonham] n
letter of recall 소환장 [sohwan
jang] n
level 수준 [sujun] n
library 도서관 [tosogwan] n
liberate 해방하다 [haebanghada]vt
liberation 해방 [haebang] n
lie 눕다 [nupda] vi
life 생활 [saenghwal] n; 생명
[saengmyong] n
lift 승강기 [sung. gang·gi] n
light 빛 [pit] n; 가벼운 [kaby
oun] a att fo [gong·op]n
light industry 경공업 [kyong.
light music 경음악 [kyong. umak] n
lighthouse 등대 [tungdae] n
lighting 번개 [pon. gae] n
like 좋아하다 [choahada] v with
con fo, 즐기다 [chulgida] vt
limb 팔다리 [paldari] n
limit 한계 [han. gye] n
limitlessly 한없이 [hanopsi] ad
d line 방침 [pangchim] n
lip 입술 [ipsul] n
literature 문학 [munhak] n
little 작은 [chagun] a att fo
live 살다 [salda] vi, 거주하다
[kojuhada]vt. 지내다[chinaeda] vi
lively 활발한[pallalhan]a att fo
load 점을 싣다 [chimul sitda] v
with n
lofty 고상한[kosang-han]a att fo
London 런던 [london] n
long 긴 [kin] a att fo
long-distance bus 시외버스 [sioe
bbosu] n
long life and good health 만수무
강 [mansumugang] n [ma] n
long (spell of) rain 장마 [chang
lose 지다 [chida] vi. 잃다 [ilt
a] vt
lounge 휴게실 [hyugyesil] n
love 사랑 [sarang] n; 사랑하다
[saranghada] vt
low 낮은 [najun] a att fo
loyalty 충성 [chungsong] n
lunch 점심밥 [chomsimbap] n, 점
심식사 [chomsimsiksa] n, 점심
[chomsim] n
lung 폐 [pe] n
machine 기계 [kigye] n
magazine 잡지 [chapji] n
magnificent 평장한 [koengjanghan] a att fo, 용장한 [ungjiang han] a att fo
maize 강냉이 [kangnaeng.i] n
make 만들다 [mandulda] vt
make a revolution 혁명하다 [hyong myonghada] vi
make clean 깨끗하다 [ggaeggu si hada] v with ad [vi. vt
make friends with 사귀다 [sagwida]
man 남자 [namja] n
man 사람 [saram] n; 남자 [namja]
management board 관리위원회 [kwalliwiwonhoe] n
manager 지배인 [chibaein] n
mangnolia blossom 목란꽃 [moran.ggot] n
Mangyong Hill 만경봉 [man.gy ongbong] n
Mangyongdae 만경대 [mangyong Mansudae Art Theatre 만수대예술 극장 [mansudaeyeulsugukjang] n
many 많은 [manun] a att fo 여러 [yoro] pre-n
map 지도 [chido] n
marathon马拉松 [marason] n
marathon runner马拉松선수 [mara sonsonsu] n
March 삼월 [samwol] n
march 행진하다 [haengjinhadada] vi
mark 접수 [chomsu] n
market 시장 [sijang] n
mass gymnastic display 집단체조 [chipdanchejo] n [daehoe] n
mass meeting 군중대회 [kunjung kunjung]

massage 안마 [anma] n
masses 군중 [kunjung] n. 대중 [taejung] n
masses of the people 인민대중 [inmindaejung] n
mast 눈대 [totdae] n
master 주인 [chunin] n
match 시합 [sihap] n; 성냥 [song nyang] n
material 자체 [chajae] n. 재료 [chaeryo] n
materials 자료 [charyo] n
maternity hospital 산원 [sanwon] n
May 오월 [owol] n
meal 식사 [siksa] n
means 수단 [sudan] n
measure 측다 [chaeda] vt
meat 고기 [kogi] n [hada] vt
mechanize 기계화하다 [kigyehwa
medical treatment 치료 [chiryo] n
medicine 약 [yak] n
meet 만나다 [mannada] vt
meeting 모임 [moim] n. 회의 [hoe ui] n, 상봉 [sangbong] n
melon 참외 [chamoe] n
melt 녹다 [nokda] vi
member 성원 [songwon] n
member of the Workers’ Party of Korea 조선로동당원 [choson rodongdangwon] n
member of troops 대원 [taewon] n
memorial house 기념관 [kinyom gwan] n [pyo] n
menu 식사안내표 [siksa. annae
merry 즐거운 [chulgoun] a att fo
method 방법 [pangbop] n
middle school 중학교 [chunghak

429
never 결코 [kyolko] ad
new 새로운 [saeroun] a att fo, 새 [sae] pre-n
new year 새해 [saehae] n
New Year's Day 설날 [sollal] n
news 소식 [sosik] n
newspaper 신문 [sinmun] n
next 다음의 [taumui] n gen
next month 래달 [raedal] n
next year 명년 [myongnyon] n
night 밤 [pam] n
night train 밤차 [pamcha] n
nine 아홉 [ahop] num, 구 [ku] num
ninety 아흔 [ahun] num, 구십 [ku sip] num [num
ninth 아홉(번)째 [ahop(bon)jjae] n
noodle 국수 [kuksu] n

obligatory 의무적 [uimujok] n
observation study 전학 [kyonhak] n
observe 관찰하다 [kwanchalhada]
occupation 직업 [chigop] n
o'clock 시 [si] n
October 시월 [siwol] n
oculist 안과의사 [an gwauisa] n
of course 물론 [mullon] ad
off day 쉬는날 [swinunnal] n
office worker 사무원 [samuwon]
officer 군관 [kun gwan] n
official 공식적 [kongsikjok] n
often 자주 [chaju] ad
oh! 오 [o] int, 아 [a] int
oil 기름 [kirum] n
one 하나 [hana] num, 한 [han]
 num, 일 [il] num [ad
only 다만 [taman] ad, 오직 [ojik]
north 북(쪽) [puk ijok] n
to north(ern) 북쪽의 [pukijogui] n gen
nose 코 [ko] n
not 아니다 [ani] ad, 안 [an] ad
note 각서 [kakso] n
notebook 학습장 [haksupjang] n
to novelist 소설가 [sosolga] n
November 십일월 [sibirwol] n
now 이제 [ije] n, 지금 [chigum] n
nuclear weapons 핵무기 [haeng mugi] n
nucleus free 비핵 [pihaek] n
number 수 [su] n, 번호 [ponho] n
호 [ho] n
nurse 간호원 [kanhowon] n
nursery 란야소 [tagaso] n

open 열다 [yolda] vt; 공개적 [kong gaejok] n
opera 가곡 [kaguk] n
opinion 의견 [uigyon] n
oppose 반대하다 [pandaehada] vt
oppress 압박하다 [apbakada] vt
oppressed nation 피압바민족 [piep bakminjok] n [ogap] n
oppression 압박 [apbak] n, 억압
or 혹은 [hogun] ad
orange 병 [kyul] n
orchard 과수원 [kwasuwon] n
order 차례 [charye] n, 명령 [myong ryong] n, 질서 [chilso] n;
주문하다 [chumunhada] vt
ordinary 보통의 [potongui] n gen
organ 기관 [kigwan] n
organization 조직 [chojik] n
organize 조직하다 [chojikada] vt
overcoat 외투 [oetu] n
overflow 넘치다 [nomchida] vi
overfulfil 넘쳐수행하다 [nomchyo

suhaenghada] v with con fo
overthrow 타도하다 [tadohada] vt
oyster 골 [kul] n

peace zone 평화지대 [pyonghwaji
dae] n
peaceful 평화로운 [pyonghwaro
un] a att fo ,평화적[pyonghwajok]

peach 복숭아 [poksung.a] n & n
pear 배 [pae] n
pedagogy 교육학 [kyoyukak] n
pen 펜 [pen] n
pencil 연필 [yonpil] n
peninsula 반도 [pando] n
people 인민 [inmin] n
People’s Army 인민군 [inmin.gun]
n,인민군대[inmin.gundae] n
People’s Palace of Culture 인민
문화궁전 [inminmunhwagung.jo
on] n [jong.gwon] n
people’s power 인민정권 [inmin
pepper 후추가루 [huchuggaru] n
perform 공연하다[kong.yonhada] vt
performance 공연 [kong.yon] n.

perhaps 아마 [ama] ad. 글씨[kul
permanent wave 파마 [pama] n
person 사람 [saram] n;명[myong]
incomp n
personal effects 개인용품 [kaein
yongpum] n
personally 몸소 [momso] ad
pharmacy 약국 [yakguk] n
photo 사진 [sajin] n
photographing 사진작가[sajinjjik
gi] n

P

paediatrician 소아과의사 [soaggwa
uisa] n
page 페이지 [peji] n
painful 아픈 [apun] a att fo
pair 짝 [ssang] n, 짝 [jjak] n,

khole [kolle] n

palace 궁전 [kungjon] n [dak] n
palm (of the hand) 손바닥 [sonba
paper 종이 [chong.i] n
paradise 라외 [ragwon] n
parcel 소포 [sopo] n
pare 같다 [ggakda] vt
parents 부모 [pumo] n
park 공원 [kongwon] n

part 부분 [pubun] n
part from 해여지다 [heyojida] vi
partisan 탁치산 [bbaljjisan] n
partisan area 유격구 [yugyokgu] n
party 당 [tang] n [hoe] n
party congress 당대회 [tangdae
party member 당원 [tang.won] n

party policy 당정책 [tangjong
chaek] n

pass 합격하다 [hapgyokada] vi,vt
passport 러권 [ryoggwon] n
passport number 러권번호 [ryo
ggwonbonho] n
patriotism 애국주의 [aegukjuui] n
pay 봉사 [mulda] vt, 차르다
[chiruda] vt [ada] vi
pay attention to 주의하다 [chuuinh
peace 평화 [pyonghwal] n
physical culture 체육 [cheon] n
physician 내과의사 [naeggwauisa] n
piano 피아노 [piano] n
pick (up) 집다 [chipda] vt
picture 그림 [kurim] n
picture book 그림책 [kurimchaeek] n
picture postcard 그림엽서 [kurim yopso] n
piece 개 [kae] incomp n, 대 [tae] incomp n
pig 돼지 [twaeji] n
pile up 쌓다 [ssata] vt
pillow 벨개 [pegae] n
pine 소나무 [sonamu] n
pine-nut tree 갖나무 [channamu] n
ping-pong 런구 [takgu] n
place 자리 [chari] n, 곳 [kot] n
place of departure 떠난곳 [ddo nan.got] n
plan 계획 [kyehoek] n
planet 행성 [haengsong] n
plant 식물 [singmul] n
plate 접시 [chopsi] n
platform 연단 [yondan] n, 플랫폼 [pullaetuhom] n
play 놀음 [norum] n, 놀다 [nolda] vi
play a person’s accompaniment 반주하다 [panjuhada] vi
pleasant 유쾌한 [yukwaehan] a
please 어서 [oso] ad att fo
plunder 빼앗하다 [ryaktalhada] vt
poet 시인 [siin] n
point 점 [chom] n
policy 정책 [chongchaek] n
political power 정권 [chong.gwon] n
politics 정치 [chongchi] n
pork 돼지고기 [twaejigogi] n
porter 짐을 운반하는 사람 [chimnarununsaram] n with att fo
portrait 초상화 [chosang.hwa] n
possibility 가능성이 [kanungsong] n
post 초소 [choso] n; 우편 [upyon] n
post office 우편국 [upyon.guk] n
postage 우편료금 [upyonryogum] n
postcard 우편엽서 [(upyon)yopso] n
Potonggang Hotel 보통강례관 [potonggang ryogwan] n
pound 파운드 [paundu] n
power 힘 [him] n
precious 귀중한 [kwijunghan] a
att fo, 고귀한 [kogwihan] a
att fo, 귀여운 [kwiyoun] a att fo
premier 총리 [chongri] n
preparation 준비 [chunbi] n
prepare 준비하다 [chunbihada] vi, vt
prescription 처방 [chobang] n
present 선물 [sonmul] n
president 주석 [chusok] n, 대통령 [taetongryong] n
pretty 예 [ggae] ad
price 값 [kap] n
primary school 인민학교 [inmin hakgyo] n
principal 교장 [kyojang] n
prize 상 [sang] n
problem 문제 [munje] n
produce 생산하다 [saengsanhada] vi, vt
production 생산 [saengsan] n
programme 강령 [kangryong] n; 공연순서 [kongyonsunso] n
proletarian 프로레타리아 [puroreta ria] n
promise 약속하다 [yaksokada] vt
promote 추동하다 [chudonghada] vt
property 재산 [chaesan] n
propose 제의하다 [cheuihada] vt, 제기하다 [chegihada] vt
prosper 번영하다 [ponyonghada] vi
prosperity 번영 [ponyong] n, 통성 [ryungsong] n
province 도 [to] n  [sa] n
publishing house 출판사 [chulpan
pulsate 고등치다 [kodongchida] vi
pulse 백박 [maekbak] n
pupil 학생 [haksaeng] n
puppet 과외 [koeroe] n
puppet regime 과외정권 [koeroe jong.gwon] n
purchases 물건사기 [mulgonsagi] n
purpose 목적 [mogjok] n
put 놓다 [nota] vt
put on 입다 [ipda] vt, 신다 [sin
Pyongyang 평양 [pyongyang] n
Pyongyang Grand Theatre 평양대
극장 [pyongyangdaegukjang] n
Pyongyang Indoor Stadium 평양
체육관 [pyongyangcheyukgwan] n
Pyongyang International House of Culture 평양국제문화회관 [pyong
yang gukjemunhwahoeogwan] n
Pyongyang Maternity Hospital 평양산원 [pyongyangsanwon] n
Pyongyang Metro 평양지하철도
[pyongyangjihacholdo] n

Q

quality 질 [chil] n
quantity 량 [ryang] n, 수량 [su
ryang] n
question 문제 [munje] n
quick 빠른 [bbarun] a att fo
quickly 빨리 [bballi] ad
quiet 조용한 [choyonghan] a att
going [aju] ad

R

radio 라디오 [rajio] n
railroad 철길 [cholgil] n
(rail way) station 철거장 [chong
gojang] n, 역 [yok] n
rain 비 [pi] n
rainbow 무지개 [mujigae] n
raincoat 비옷 [piot] n
raise 올리다 [ollida] causat v
rat 쥐 [chwi] n
razor 면도칼 [myondokal] n
reach 달다 [tata] vi
read 읽다 [ikda] vt
real 실재 [siljejok] n, 현실적
[hyonsiljok] n
realize 실현하다 [silhyonhada] vt
really 실로 [sillo] ad, 참으로
hamuro ad, 실제로 [silche
round 동근 [tung.gun] a att fo
round-trip ticket 왕복차표 [wang bokchapyo] n
ruble 루블 [rubul] n [llida] vi
run 달리기 [talligi] n; 달리다 [ta run against 부닥치다 [Pudakchi da] vi
runner 달리기선수 [talligisonsu]n
rules 규정 [kyujong] n
rural economy 농촌경제 [nongchon gyongri] n
rush 돌진하다 [toljinhada] vi
sacrifice 성스러운 [songsuroun] a att fo
sad 슬픈 [sulpun] a att fo
salad 샐러드 [saengchae] n
salt 소금 [sogum] n
same 같은 [katun] a att fo
same time 동시 [tongsii] n
sand 모래 [moraee] n
Saturday 토요일 [toyoil] n
sausage 순대 [sundae] n
saw 볼 [top] n
say 말하다 [malhada] vi, vt, 말씀하다 [malssumhada] vt
scenery 경치 [kyongchi] n
school 학교 [hakgyo] n
school boy 남학생 [namhaksaeng]n
girl 여학생 [nyohaksaeng]n
scientist 과학자 [kwahakja] n
sea 바다 [pada] n
season 계절 [kyejeol] n
seat 자리 [chari] n 'ho] n
seat number 자리번호 [charibon second 두번째 [tubonjjae] num.
dolce [tuljae] num; 초 [cho] n
secret camp 밀영 [miryong] n
secretary 사기 [sogi] n, 비서 [pi so] n
see 보다 [poda] vt, 구경하다 [ku gyonghada] vt
see (a person) off 바래다 [pareada] vt
seek 찾다 [chatda] vt if fo
seldom 드물게 [tumulge] a ad
selection 선택 [sontaek] n
self 자신 [chasin]n, 자기 [chagi] pron
self-defence 자위 [chawi] n
self-sustenance 자립 [charip] n
sell 팔다 [palda] vt
seller 판매원 [panmaewon] n
send 보내다 [ponaeda] vt, 부치다 [puchida] vt
send a telegram 전보를 치다 [chon borul chida] v with n
sender 보내는 사람 [ponaenun sa ram] n with att fo. 발신인 [palsinin] n
sending 발송 [palsong] n
September 구월 [kuwol] n ifo
serious 심각한 [simgakan] a att
serve 복무하다 [pongmuhada] vi
set 안하다 [anchida] causat v;
조 [cho] n, 일식 [ilsik] n
seven 일곱 [ilgop] num, 칠 [ch il] num [jjae] num
seventh 일곱 번째 [ilgop(bon)
seventy 일흔 [ilhun] num, 일십
sex 성 [song] n [chilsip] num
sex distinction 성별 [songbyol] n
shallow 얇은 [yatun] a att fo
shave 깔다 [ggakda] vt
shaving 면도 [myondo] n (pron
she 그 녀자 [ku nyoyja] n with
shear 깔다 [ggakda] vt
sheet 척 [chang] n
sherbet 과일청동음료 [kwailchong
ryang. umryo] n
shine 비치다 [pichida] vi, 빛나다
[pinnada] vi
ship 배 [pae] n (jom] n
shoe store 신발상점 [sinbalsang
shoes 신 [sin] n, 신발 [sinbal]n
shop 상점 [sangjom] n
short 짧은 [jjalbun] a att fo
short time 짧간 [chamgan] n
shoulder 어깨 [oggae] n; 뺨에다
[ddomeda] vt
shovel 삽 [sap] n
show 보여주다 [poyojuda] v with
con fo, 안내하다 [annaehada]
vt, 대주다 [taejuda] vt
shut 닫다 [tata] vt
sign 간판 [kanpan] n; 수표하나
[supyo)hada] vi
sign one's name 서명하다 [so
myonghada] vi
signature 수표 [supyo] n
significance 의의 [uiui] n
silk 비단 [pidan] n
silver 은 [un] n
singer 가수 [kasu] n [bang] n
single room 1인용 방 [irinyong
sister 누이 [nu] n
sit 앉다 [anda] vi
six 여섯 [yosot] num,륙[ryuk]num
sixth 여섯 번째 [yosot(bon)jjae]
num
sixty 여순 [yesun] num,육십
[ryuksip] num
skin 살가죽 [salga)juk] n, 피부
[pibu] n
sky 하늘 [hanul] n
sleep 잠 [cham] n; 자다 [chada]
vi, 잠자다 [chamjada] vi, 주무시다 [chumusida] vi
sleeping carriage 침대차 [chimdae
cha] n
slogan 구호 [kuho] n
slowly 천천히 [chonchoni] ad
small 작은 [chagun] a att fo
small change 잔돈 [chandon] n
smoke 담배를 피우다 [tambaerul
piuda] v with n
snack bar 간식당 [kanisikdang]n
snow 눈 [nun] n; 눈이 오다 [nuni
oda] phrase
snowstorm 눈보라 [nunbora] n
so 그려한 [kurohan] a con fo ; 그
렇게 [kuroke] a ad fo , 이렇게
[iroke] a ad fo , 이리 [iri] ad
so to speak 말하자면 [malhaja
myon] v con fo
soap 비누 [pinu] n
social 사회의 [sahoeui] n gen.
사회적 [sahoejok] n
socialism 사회주의 [sahoejuui] n
socialist 사회주의적 [sahoejuui
society 사회 [sahoe] n ljok] n
socks 짧은 양말 [jjalbun yangmal]
with att fo
soda water 탄산물 [tansanmul] n
soft 부드러운 [puduroun] a att fo
soft boiled egg 반숙한 닭알 [pan
sukan talgal] n with att fo
soft sugar 사탕가루 [satang.garu]n
soil 더럽히다 [toropida] vt
soldier 병사 [pyongsan] n, 전사 [chonson] n
sole 발바닥 [palbadak] n
solicitude 배려 [paeryo] n
solidarity 단결 [tan-gyol] n, 협력
song 노래 [norae] n
sorrel [pyol] n
sorry 죄다 [mianhan] a, att fo
soup 국 [kuk] n
sour 신 [sin] a
south 남쪽 [namjjok] n
southern 남쪽의 [namjogui] n gen
souvenir 기념품 [kinyompum] n
souvenir shop 선물상점 [sonmul sangjom] n
sovereignty 주권 [chuggwon] n
soy 간장 [kanjang] n
spade 산 [sap] n
spare 애기 다 [aggida] vt
speak 말하다 [malhada] vi, vt
special 특별한 [tukbyolhan] a
att fo spectator 관람자 [kwallamja] n
speech 연설 [yonsol] n
speed 속도 [sokdo] n
sphere 영역 [ryong-yok] n
spirit 정신 [chongsin] n
spoon 숟가락 [sutgarak] n
spread 피저다 [pojida] vi
spring 봄 [pom] n
spring breeze 봄바람 [pom baram] n
spring day 봄날 [pomnal] n
squad 분대 [pundae] n
stadium 경기장 [kyongsangjang] n
stage 단계 [tan-gye] n, 무대 [mu dae] n
stairs 계단 [kyedan] n, 출입 [chung dae] n
stamp 우표 [upyo] n
stand 서다 [soda] vi
stand-point 협장 [ripjang] n
star 별 [pyol] n
start 출발하다 [chulbalhada] vi, vt
state 국가 [kukga] n
statement 성명 [songmyong] n
statue 동상 [tongsang] n
stay 체류 [cheryu] n
steam 김 [kim] n, 증기 [chunggi] n
steel 강철 [kangchol] n
step in 들어서다 [turosoda] vi
step on 밟다 [papda] vt
steward 접대원 [chopdaewon] n
stewardess 여자접대원 [nyojajop daewon] n
still 고요한 [koyohan] a, att fo;
조용히 [chyonji] ad, 아직 [a jik] ad
stockings 긴양말 [kinyangmal] n
stomach 위 [wi] n
stop 정지 [chongji] n, 정류소 [chongryuso] n;
출자하다 [chung jihada] vt, 멈추다 [motda] vi
stop 체! [sot] imp fo
story 이야기 [iyagi] n
straight 곧은 [kodun] a
att fo;
골바로 [kotbaro] ad, 바로 [paro] ad
strawberry 딸기 [ddalgi] n
street 거리 [kori] n
streetcar 전차 [choncha] n
strike in 박다 [pakda] vt
strong 센 [sen] a
att fo
struggle 룹생 [tujaeng] n
student 대학생 [taehaksaeng] n
student at a university-level factory college 공장대학생 [kong jangdaehaksaeng] n
students and children's palace 학생소년공전 [haksaengsonyon. gung.jon] n
Study House 학습당 [haksupdang] n
submit 굽하다 [kulhada] vi, 굽복하다 [kulbokada] vi
subway 지하철도 [chihacholdo] n
succeed 성공하다 [song.gonghada] success 성과 [song.gwa] n; vt
successor 계승자 [kyesung.ja] n. 후계자 [hugyeja] n
such 이러한 [irohan] a; att fo

suckling child 첫먹이 [chonmogi] suffer 당하다 [tanghada] vt; n
sugar 사탕 [satang] n
suit (of clothes) 벌 [pol] incomp n
sultry 무더운 [mudoun] a att fo
summer 여름 [yorum] n
sun 해 [hae] n, 태양 [taeyang] n
Sunday 일요일 [iryoil] n
sunrise 해돋이 [haedoji] n
sunshine 해빛 [haebit] n
supper 저녁밥 [chonyokbap] n.
저녁식사 [chonyoksiksa] n
support 지지하다 [chijihada] vt
surgeon 외과의사 [oeggwauisa] n
sweat 맛 [ddam] n
sweep 쓸다 [ssulda] vt
sweet 단 [tan] a; att fo
sworn enemy 철천지원수 [cholchon jiwonssu] n [chedo] n
system 체계 [chegeye] n. 제도

table d'hôte 정식 [chongsik] n
Taedong Gate 대동문 [taedong mun] n
Taesongsan Revolutionary Martyrs' Cemetery 대성산혁명렬사 봉 [taesongsanhyongmyongryol sanung] n
tailor shop 양복점 [yangbokjom] n
take 들다 [tulda] vt; 걸리다 [koldida] vi
take a photograph 사진을 찍다 [sa jinul jjikda] v with n [vi
take a walk 산책하다 [sanbohada]
take in 태우다 [taeuda] causat v
take into consideration 탐사하다

tasanhada] vt
take off 벗다 [potda] vt
take-off 리륙 [riryuk] n
take part in 참가하다 [chamga hada] vi
take place 일어나다 [ironada] vi
take trouble 수고하다 [sugohada] vi
talk 담화 [tamhwajja] n. 화담 [hoe dam] n
target 목표 [mokpyo] n
task 과업 [kwaop] n, 임무 [immu] n
taste 맛 [mat] n; 맛보다 [matbo da] v with n
tax 세금 [segum] n
taxi 택시 [taeksi] n
taxi stand 택시정류소 [taeksijong ryuso] n
tea 차 [cha] n
teach 가르치다 [karuchida] vi
teacher 선생 [sansaeng] n, 교원 [kyowon] n [교사[kyosi] n
teaching 가르침 [karuchim] n,
tear 눈물 [nunmul] n
untear2짖다 [jjitda] vt
technical 기술의 [kisurui] n gen
technical revolution 기술혁명 [kisulhyongmyong] n
technician 기술자 [kisulja] n
technique 기술 [kisul] n
telegram 전보 [chonbo] n
telegram form 전보용지 [chonbo yongji] n
telephone 전화 [chonhwa] n
telephone operator 교환수 [kyohwan su] n

the Democratic People's Repub-
lic of Korea, the DPRK 조선 민주주의인민공화국 [chosonmin jujuuiinmin-gonghwaguk] n
the highest 최고의 [choegoui] n gen
the Worker's Party of Korea 조 선로동당 [chosonrodongdang] n
theatre 극장 [kukjang] n
theory 이론 [riron] n
there 거기에 [kogie] pron dat.
there에 [chogie] pron dat
there be 있다 [itda] vi, 제시하다 [kyesida] vi
there is no ... 없다 [opda] a
therefore 그러니까 [kuronigga] a
thesis 논제 [teje] n [con fo
they 그들 [kudul] pron
thick 굵은 [kulgun] a att fo, 밸 [paen] a att fo, 자주한 [chau kan] a att fo
thigh 네모자리 [nopjokdari] n
thin 얇은 [yolbun] a att fo, 가는 [kanun] a att fo [vt
think 생각하다 [saeng.gakada] vi,
third 세번째 [sebonjjae] num, 셋제 [setjjae] num
thirty 세로 [sorun] num, 삼십 [sam
this 이 [i] pron [sip] num
this place 여기 [yogi] pron
this year 올해 [olhae] n
thought 생각 [saeng.gak] n
thousand 천 [chon] num
three 세 [set] num, 세 [se] num,
sash [sam] num
thunder 우뢰 [uroe] n
Thursday 목요일 [mogyoil] n
ticket 표 [pyo] n, 차표 [chapyo] n
ticket office 표판눈곳 [pyopanun. got] n
till 

time 
				
times 

timetable 

tinned goods 

to one's regret 

toone's suropge a ad fo 

today 

toe 

together 

toilet 
																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																						
to
umbrella 우산 [usan] n
unanimously 한결같이 [hangyolga chi] ad
uncle 아저씨 [ajossi] n
unconditionally 무조건 [mujoggon] n
underground (railway) 지하철도 [chihacholdo] n
understand 리해하다 [rihaehada] vt
underwear 속내의 [songnaeui] n
undivided 유일적 [yuiljok] n
unification 통일 [tong-il] n
unify 통일하다 [tong-ilhada] vt
unite 몽치다 [mungchida] vi

vacant 빈 [pin] a att fo
vacillation 동요 [tong.yo] n
valley 골짜기 [koljjagi] n, 골 [kol] n
vegetables 남새 [namsae] n.
victory 승리 [sungri] n
view 견해 [kyonhae] n
village 마을 [maul] n, 농촌 [nong chon] n

vitalon 비날론 [pinallon] n
vinegar 식초 [sikcho] n
violence 폭력 [pongryok] n
visa 사증 [sajjung] n
visa number 사증번호 [sajjung bonho] n
volleyball 배구 [paegu] n [n
voting rights 선거권 [songoggwon]

waist 허리 [hori] n
wait 기다리다 [kidarida] vt

waiter 접대원 [chopdaewon] n
waiting room 기다림칸 [kidarim]
wolf wolf n
woman 여자 [nyoja] n, 여성을 [nyosong] n
woman musician 여자음악가 [nyoja umakga] n
won 원 [won] n (unit of Korean currency)
woronder 기적 [kijok] n
word 말 [mal] n, 단어 [tano] n
work 일 [il] n, 작업 [chagop] n.
work-team 작업반 [chagopban] n
worker 로동자 [rodongja] n

Workers' Party 로동당 [rodong dang] n
working class 로동계급 [rodong. working people 근로자[kulloja]n
workshop 작업장 [chikjang] n
world 세계 [segye] n. 세상 [sesang] n
world-wide 세계적 [segyejok] n
wrap 쌩다 [ssada] vt
wreath 화환 [hwahwan] n
write 쓰다 [ssuda] vt
writer 작가 [chakga] n

X

X-ray X선 [eksusan] n, 렌트겐선 [rentugenson] n

Y

yard 마당 [madang] n
year 해 [hae] n, 년 [nyon] n
yellow 노란 [noran] a att fo, 노를 [numnu] a att fo
yes 예 [ye] int, 응 [ung] int
yesterday 어제 [oje] n

지네 [chane] pron, 당신
[neun] n, 그대 [kudae] pron-
너희 [nahui] pron
young 젊은 [cholmun]a att fo, 어
리 [orin]a att fo
your 너의 [noui] pron
youth 청년 [chongnyon] n

Z

zone 지대 [chidae] n
zoo 동물원 [tongmurwon] n
The old home at Mangyongdae where the great leader Comrade Kim Il Sung was born and spent his childhood, nursing his lofty revolutionary aims.
Tower of Juche Idea
개선문  Arch of Triumph
International Friendship Exhibition
A Part of Pyongyang
The Combative Sports Gymnasium in Chongchun Street

Chongryu Restaurant

May Day Stadium with 150,000 seats

Mansudae Art Theatre
만경대물놀이장 The Mangyongdae Pool

평양체육관
Pyongyang Indoor Stadium

청춘거리 승구관 The Handball Gymnasium in Chongchun Street

빙상관 Ice Rink
Grand People’s Study House

People’s Palace of Culture
Lake Chon on Mt. Paekdu
대성산혁명렬사릉 Taesongsan Revolutionary Martyrs' Cemetery

평양산원 Pyongyang Maternity Hospital
Chollima Statue
Hwanggumbol Station, Pyongyang Metro

West Sea Barrage
Control Room of a Factory

Mangyongdae Fun Fair
민속놀이 Folk Stunt
Harvesting on a Farm

Historical Remains
A View of Mt. Kumgang

A View of Mt. Myohyang
조선말 배우는 책
(영 어)

집필 공익 현
심사 부교수 준박사 박종문
준박사 안송호 외 4명

편집 정경선
사진 조동소, 정승영

장정 조동소
교정 박수련, 김지순

낸곳 외국문도서출판사
인쇄소 평양종합인쇄공장

인쇄 1989년 5월 18일
발행 1989년 5월 29일

1.500 부
값 3원 50전